



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

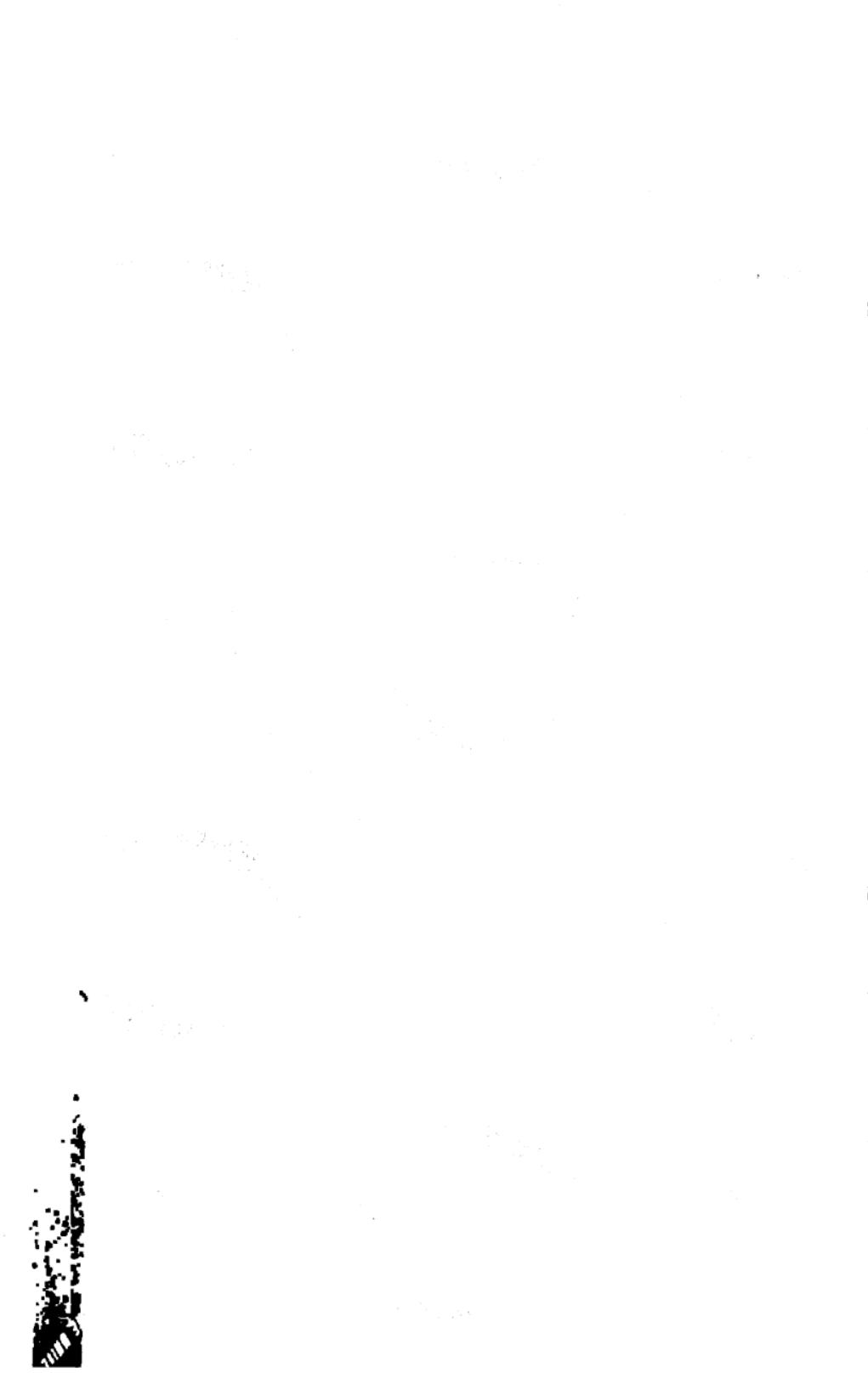
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

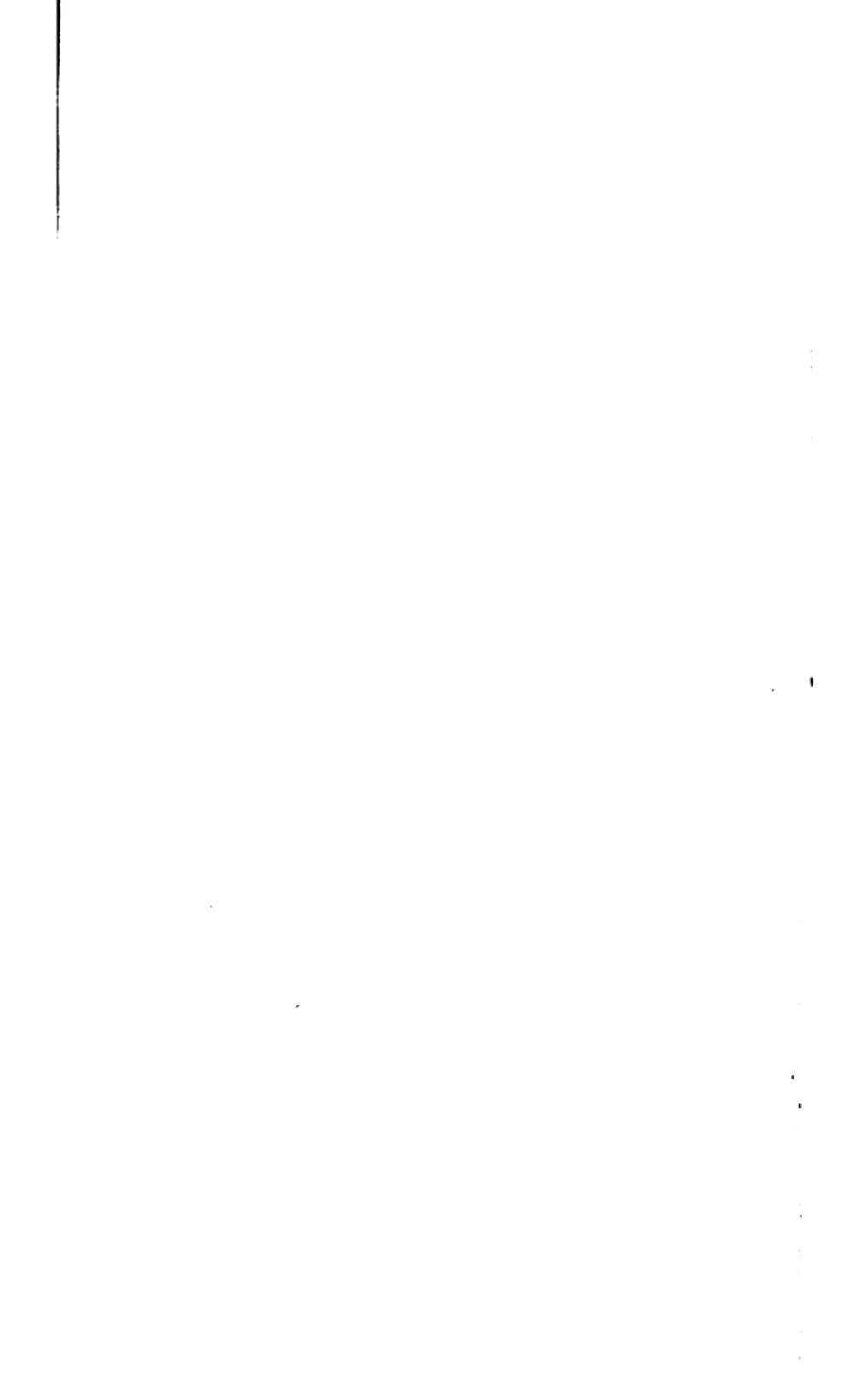
### About Google Book Search

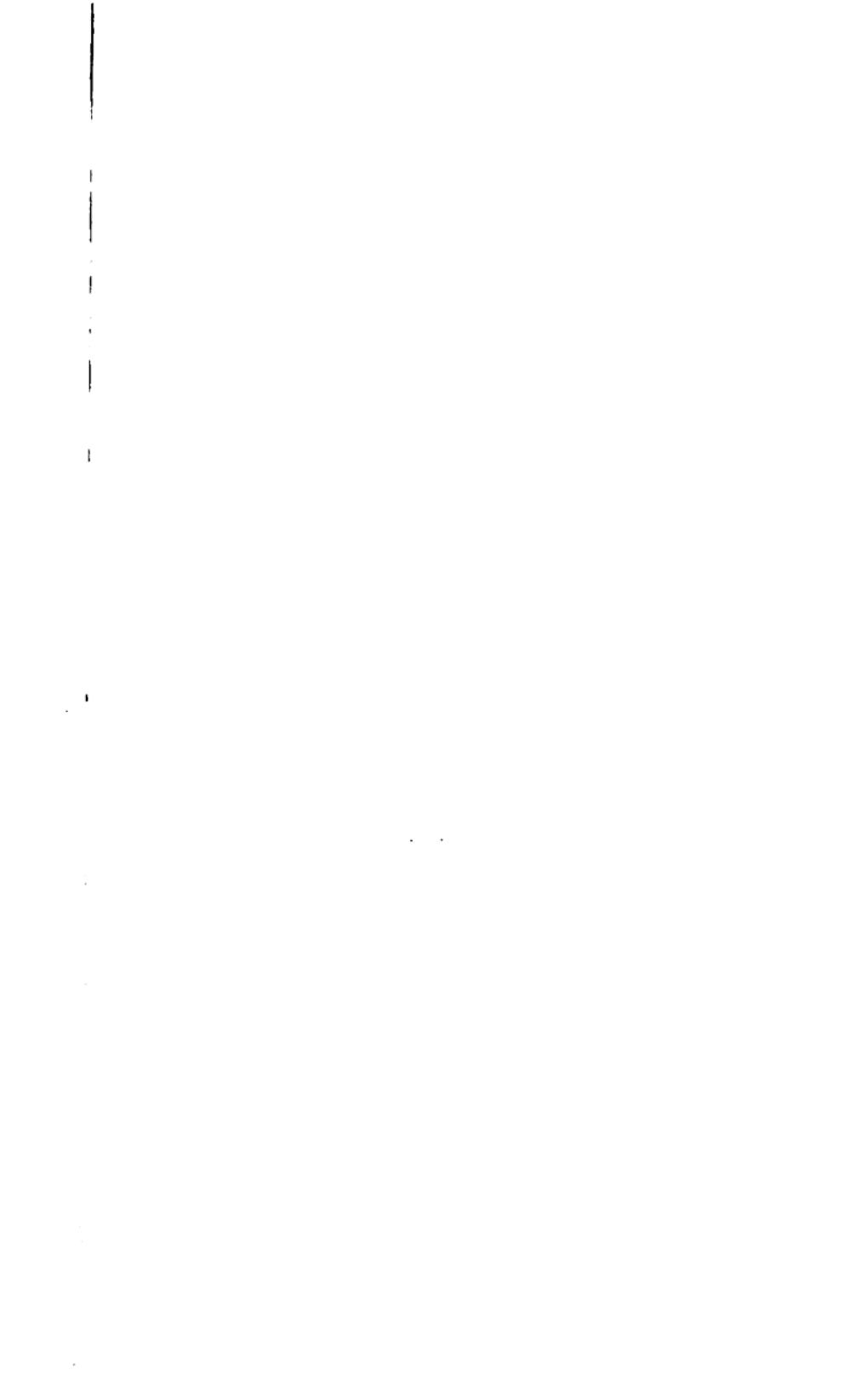
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

















A

# PRIMARY HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES. FOR SCHOOLS AND FAMILIES.

BY BENSON J. LOSSING,

AUTHOR OF "THE PICTORIAL FIELD BOOK OF THE REVOLUTION," "ILLUSTRATED FAMILY HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES," "PICTORIAL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES FOR SCHOOLS," "EMINENT AMERICANS," ETC. ETC.

ILLUSTRATED WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS.

NEW YORK:  
PUBLISHED BY MASON BROTHERS.

BOSTON: MASON & HAMLIN. PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.  
CINCINNATI: W. B. SMITH & CO.

1868.

E178  
.1  
.L87

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1858, by  
**MASON BROTHERS,**  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of  
New York.

*57356*  
**LOSSING'S HISTORIES OF THE UNITED STATES.**

**A COMPLETE SERIES FOR ALL CLASSES.**

**LOSSING'S PICTORIAL PRIMARY HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES:** 222 pages, 12mo. Price 60 cents.

**LOSSING'S PICTORIAL SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES:** 371 pages, large 12mo. Price \$1.

**LOSSING'S ILLUSTRATED FAMILY HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES;** with a Frontispiece illuminated in colors. *For District, School, and Family Libraries.* 672 pages imperial octavo, bound in emblematically embossed and gilt leather. Price \$4. *Sold by Subscription only.*

Lossing's Histories (by Benson J. Lossing, Esq., author of the "Field-Book of the Revolution," "Eminent Americans," etc.) are all manufactured in the best style; the paper is white, fine, and smooth; printing unexceptionable; and the binding neat, attractive, and durable. The illustrations, in the very best style of modern wood engraving, are correct portraits of men and things; have been gotten up without regard to expense; and, it is believed, greatly enhance the utility of the books as instructors. As to the letter-press, the publishers refer to the books themselves, which will confirm Mr. Lossing's established reputation as a writer for conciseness, perspicuity, and attractiveness of style, accuracy of delineation of facts, and excellence of arrangement.

ELECTROTYPE BY  
THOMAS B. SMITH,  
82 & 84 Beekman-street.

PRINTED BY  
C. A. ALVORD,  
15 Vandewater st., N. Y.



# HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### SECTION I.

---

*The Author to his Young Friend.*

---

#### MY YOUNG FRIEND:

1. I am now as old as your father. But I was once young, was fond of asking questions, and loved to have them answered. Since then I have learned many things by asking questions, reading books, and listening, but not so many as I ought, because, like all boys, I was often playing when I should have been studying.

2. But I have learned a great deal about the country we live in, and it is so pleasant to know so much about it, that I want all of my young friends to learn what I have learned, and much more.

3. Listen to me, then, and I will tell you a story about the Indians who first lived here, and then about the great sailors, and soldiers, and governors, and the hundreds of men who came here and cut down the trees, built houses and churches, and raised grain in fields and fruit in orchards.

4. Then I will tell you how, when many thousands were here, with their wives and children, they made laws, built villages and cities, factories and ships, steamboats and railways, and made every thing appear just as you see it to-day. That story is called HISTORY. When you hear a man tell a new story, you say that is *his story*—it is History.

---

The beautiful country we live in.

---

5. The story I am going to tell you, is the HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES. That is the name of our country which we love so much. Look on the map of the world and you will see that it is now a large part of North America, extending from the Atlantic Ocean on the east, which is between us and Europe, and the Pacific Ocean on the west, which is between us and Asia.

6. It has almost every kind of climate. In the north the winters are long and cold, with much snow. In the south they are short and warm, with seldom any frost. There flowers bloom all the year round. In our country every kind of grain, and fruit, and flower in the world may grow. In some parts are high mountains and great woods; in others, are wide plains, and wider lakes; and in others, hills and valleys, beautiful rivers, pleasant brooks, and great meadows called prairies.

7. In some parts there are wild and fierce Indians, buffaloes and bears, wolves and panthers, elks and deer, eagles and wild turkeys, and a great many kinds of smaller animals and birds, just as there were in the whole country before the white people, like us, came here.

8. Altogether, ours is a very noble, beautiful, and fruitful country, where every body may be happy. Here we need not be afraid of bad rulers who have power to hurt us, for if we do right nobody can injure us; and we are at liberty to do as we please, if we do not injure our neighbors.

9. And every one born in this free and beautiful country, should be proud of it, thankful to God for it, and willing to do every thing that is right to keep it free and good.

10. When I shall have told you the whole story—told you of all the dangers, and troubles, and hard work that the people who first came here had to endure, to make it such a fine country; and how much others have since done to keep it so, I am sure you will feel glad to do all in your power to help in the good work.

11. And to make you feel so, is one great reason why I wish you to listen to the whole story attentively, that you may remember it and do well.

---

How the Indians were named.Their language.

---

## SECTION II.

## THE INDIANS.

1. I will now tell you about the Indians who lived in our country before any white people were here. Where their fathers came from we can not tell, nor do you care to know at present. They were here when the white men came from Europe, and appeared very strange to them, for they were of a reddish-brown color. They were dressed in the skins of wild beasts in the cold North, and in the warm South they were almost naked.



INDIAN'S HEAD.

2. Columbus, the first great sailor who came to this country, thought the Island, or the land surrounded by water, that he first saw, was in that part of Asia called India. So he called these reddish-brown, or copper-colored people, INDIANS. I shall tell you about that great sailor presently. The Indians were found in all parts of North America, and were all very much alike in their appearance and way of living.

3. The Indians did not all talk alike. You know the American and Frenchman call the same things by different names. The American says *horse*, and the Frenchman says *cheval*. Their word or language is different. So the Indians, in different parts of the country, spoke eight kinds of language, because there were eight nations.

4. These nations were named *Algonquin*, *Huron-Iroquois*, *Cherokee*, *Catawba*, *Uchee*, *Natchez*, *Mobilian*, and *Dacotah* or *Sioux*. Now these are hard words, but you must spell them out and remember them.

QUESTIONS.—1. How did the Indians appear? How were they dressed? 2. How came they to be called Indians? 3. What can you tell about their language? 4. What were the nations called?

## Indian dwellings, money, and writing.

5. The Indians were tall and straight. They had straight black hair, fine teeth, and black eyes.



A WIGWAM.

They were seldom sick, because they had plenty of exercise and ate simple food. They lived in a sort of huts or tents, made of poles covered with the bark of trees or the skins of wild beasts. These were called *wigwams*.

6. The men went to war, hunted and fished; and the women planted corn and other things, and did all the hard work. They did not have good tools to work with, for these were made of stones, shells, and bones. Their food was the flesh of the deer, buffalo, and bear, roasted or boiled, with beans, peas, potatoes, and melons.

7. The Indians had money, but it was not like ours. It was made of shells in the shape of long beads, which they strung on threads or fastened upon belts. So many of these pieces were worth a penny, and so many more were worth a shilling or a dollar. This money they called *wampum*.

8. The Indians could not write as we do, and never saw a pen or ink. They made rude pictures to describe what had been done. Here is one of



INDIAN WRITING.

the kind. In the picture you see human figures, a boat with nine paddles, and a bear and turtle, with a fire between them. This tells the story of a fight between

some Indians. One man, you see, has his head off. Then nine of them went in a boat which they call a *canoe*, and after that two families, one called the Bear tribe or family, and the other the Turtle tribe or family, had a council or talk, by a great fire.

9. The Indians had no schools, and the little children never had pleasant picture-books to read. Their mothers taught them

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell about their appearance and houses? 6. What did they do? What was their food? 7. What kind of money did they have? 8. Can you tell about their writing?

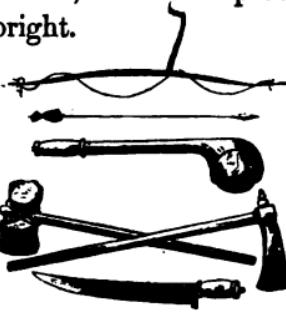


WAMPUM.

## Indian weapons, sports, and burials.

to make wampum, mats, skin and feather-clothing, and shell and bone ornaments. But I dare say they did not work much, but played nearly all day in the woods and by the pleasant brooks. They went to bed when the birds did, at sunset, and were up before the sun, and so they kept their eyes bright.

10. The Indian men loved to fight, for they sometimes felt like tigers. Forty or more of one nation would go and fight those of another nation; and sometimes there would be hundreds on both sides. They fought with bows and arrows, war-clubs, scalping-knives, and tomahawks. In the picture is seen a bow and arrow, a kind of war-club, tomahawks or hatchets, and a scalping-knife.



INDIAN WEAPONS.

11. When the men were tired of fighting, they would sometimes become good friends, as we white people do. Then they would build a great fire in the woods, and the head men of both nations would meet around it and smoke a pipe which was handed from one to the other. This was called a *calumet*, or pipe of peace.

12. The Indian men played ball, fired at the mark, danced, leaped, played games, and had other amusements, but they would never let the women join them. They were not at all polite to the women. I am sure that no right-minded boy, when he gets to be a man, will let his mother, or sister, or wife, do all the hard work, while he hunts, or fishes, or plays; and then not let them have any of the fun.

13. The Indians did not always bury their dead in the ground. When they did, they wrapped them in skins, and buried their bows and arrows, and other things, with them, supposing they would



CALUMETS.



BURIAL-PLACE.

QUESTIONS.—9. What did the children do? 10. What can you tell about Indians fighting? 11. What about their becoming friends? 12. What can you tell about their amusements? 13. What about their ~~dead~~?

Indian religion and law.What is to become of them.

want to use them in the spirit land. They often folded the body in skins, and laid it upon a high scaffold, where wild beasts could not get at it.

14. The Indians had no churches, yet they believed in God, prayed to Him, and worshiped Him. They called Him the Good Spirit; and they believed in an Evil Spirit. Instead of churches and meeting-houses, they had the sky for a roof; and the wind and the thunder, the singing of birds, and the roar of the storm, was their music. Then they would look up to the sun, the moon, and the stars, and believe that they saw God, for they knew of nothing greater. The Indians knew nothing of the Bible, and the religion of Jesus. They all had one belief, never quarreled about it, and were happy.

15. The Indians were governed by *sachems* and *chiefs*. The sachems were general rulers; the chiefs were the commanders of the Indian armies. Only wise men were made sachems, and only brave men were made chiefs. These could not govern nor lead if they were not wise and brave.

16. Such, my young Friend, were the copper-colored people who lived in this country hundreds of years ago, and some of whom live here yet. Unless you live beyond the Mississippi river, you seldom see any of them now. They are nearly all beyond that river, and are becoming fewer every year.

17. The time will come when there will not be an Indian on the earth. You may live to see that time, because they are passing rapidly away. The white man, from the beginning, has used the poor Indians badly. He has cheated and oppressed them, given them rum to take away their senses, and with swords and guns has driven them far into the wilderness.

18. God, in his wise providence, has permitted the white man to take the Indian's land away from him. The Indian would not cut down the trees and raise grain, except here and there a little patch; but the white man, as the Bible says, has made "the wilderness to blossom as the rose."

QUESTIONS.—14. What about their religion? 15. How were they governed? 16. Where are they now? 17, 18. What has the white man done?

## SECTION III.

## INDIAN HISTORY.

1. Now look on a map of the United States, and I will show you in what parts each of the eight Indian nations, of whom I have told you, lived. I would like to tell you, also, of many things that they did before the white people came. But the story is too long for me to tell you now. You will know more about it when you grow older. Do you remember the names of the eight nations, given in verse 4 of Section II.?

2. The ALGONQUINS lived in the country north and south of the great lakes which lie between the United States and Canada. They occupied nearly all of Canada, a part of New York and all of the country east of it, a part of Pennsylvania, all of New Jersey, Delaware, Maryland, and Virginia, eastern North Carolina, a portion of Kentucky and Louisiana, and all north and west of these States, eastward of the Mississippi.

3. The ALGONQUINS, like each of the other nations, were divided into tribes, or collections of families, who often quarreled, and made war upon each other, just as brothers and sisters sometimes wickedly do, I am sorry to say. But when the white people came and treated them badly, these quarrelsome tribes became friends, and joined to fight their oppressors. For many, many years, the Indians did the white people a great deal of harm, as you will learn hereafter.

4. The greatest man of all the Algonquins was Pontiac, who was a sachem and chief. He caused many of the tribes in the neighborhood of the more western lakes to join together to kill all of the white people, but did not succeed. You will hear more of this before we get through with the whole story.

5. The HURON-IROQUOIS lived in a much smaller portion of

---

The Huron-Iroquois and the Cherokees.

---

country, and were completely surrounded by the ALGONQUINS. They dwelt in a part of Canada, in large portions of New York, and in parts of Pennsylvania and Ohio, along the southern shores of Lake Erie. A few of them lived in a small part of Virginia and North Carolina.

6. The Huron-Iroquois, in the north, were divided into five tribes. These met around a great fire, at one time, and agreed to be friends forever. They formed a league, and were known as the *Five Nations* when the white people came. Finally those who lived in the south, and were called Tuscaroras, came north, joined the others, and then they were called the *Six Nations*.

7. Almost all of the Six Nations joined the British in the War of Independence, and fought the Americans. Two of their greatest men were called, by the white people, Joseph Brant and Red Jacket. The first was a great warrior, and the last was a great orator or speech-maker.

8. The CHEROKEES lived in the south-west. Their country was a very beautiful one, having high mountains and hills, fertile valleys, and many pleasant streams. Their dwelling-place covered the whole upper part of Georgia, and extended from the Carolina Broad river on the east, to the Alabama river on the west.

9. Because their country was so full of mountains, the Cherokees were called the *mountaineers of the South*. They were brave and warlike, and often had bloody battles with the *Five Nations*, who used to travel through the woods away down there to fight them. They, too, joined the British against the Americans, in the Revolution, but after that old war they were our friends.

10. The Cherokees lived in their beautiful country until a few years ago, when they were compelled to leave their nice farms, and settle in the wilderness west of the Mississippi. At that time they had schools, and churches, and printed a newspaper.

11. The Cherokees have fine farms, and schools, and churches

QUESTIONS.—5. Where did the Huron-Iroquois live? 6. What did they do? 7. What can you tell of the *Six Nations*? 8. Where did the Cherokees live? 9. What can you tell about them? 10. Where are they now, and what are they doing?

## The Catawbas, Uchees, and Natchez.

in their new country, and they are now the best Indians in America. I wish you could visit them, for they would treat you kindly.

12. The **CATAWBAS** lived in a very pleasant country in parts of North and South Carolina, between the Yadkin and Catawba rivers. They, too, were very brave, but were peaceable. They seldom went away from home; but whenever quarrelsome Indians came there to fight them, they soon sent them about their business, I can assure you. Then the quarrelsome Indians would stay away.

13. The Catawbas were generally the friends of the white people, and were the good neighbors of the Americans in South Carolina in the old wars. Now there are not a hundred of them left. They could all stand in a barn. These live on the banks of the Catawba, in South Carolina. Very soon not one will be living. How sad to think of a whole nation gone forever!

14. The **UCHEES** lived in a warm, and very beautiful country. It extended from Augusta, on the Savannah river, across the whole State of Georgia. Their principal town was near Millidgeville. They said to the white people when they came, "We were the first inhabitants who ever lived in this country." Even then there were very few of them left.



SOUTHERN INDIANS.

15. The language of the Uchees was harsh, but their dispositions were mild, like the climate. They never engaged in war, yet they appeared to be brave. There are now a few of them among the Creek tribe of Indians, west of the Mississippi.

16. The **NATCHEZ** occupied a very small portion of country, extending from the east bank of the Mississippi river, up the valley of the Pearl river to the head waters of the Chickasaw.

17. The Natchez worshiped the sun, believing it to be the

QUESTIONS.—12. Where did the Catawbas live? What was their character? 13. What more can you tell about them? 14. Where did the Uchees live? 15. What can you tell about them? 16. Where did the Natchez live?

---

The Natchez and the French people.

---

Great Spirit, as the Indians in South America did. They were proud and warlike. When, more than a hundred years ago, some French people came to live on the banks of the Mississippi, the Natchez agreed among themselves to kill them all, for they thought they had no business in their country.



MEETING OF WHITE MEN AND INDIANS. SEE PAGE 56.

18. The French people soon heard of what the Indians intended to do, and instead of waiting for the Natchez to come and attack them, they took their guns, went to the homes of the

QUESTIONS.—17. What can you tell about the Natchez? 18. What did the French do?

---

The Mobilian Tribes.

---

Indians, and in a short time killed nearly all of them. There are now only about three hundred of the Natchez Indians left.

19. The MOBILIANS composed a very extensive nation, for there were a great number of tribes. They lived chiefly in the warm country along the Gulf of Mexico, from the Atlantic Ocean to the Mississippi river, a distance of six hundred miles.

20. Their country also extended up the Mississippi river to the Ohio river, and up the Atlantic to the Cape Fear river. It included the greater part of Georgia, the whole of Florida, Alabama, and Mississippi, and part of South Carolina, Tennessee and Kentucky.

21. In the MOBILIAN nation were three great leagues, composed of several tribes. These were called Creeks, Choctaws, and Chickasaws. The climate was so mild that these people required very little clothing in winter, and in summer they went almost naked.

22. These southern Indians have given the white people a great deal of trouble. But I must confess that the white people have been most to blame, because they have not treated the poor Indians fairly. Of these troubles I shall tell you more hereafter.

23. Most of the MOBILIANS have been compelled to go to the wilderness west of the Mississippi. Many of a tribe called Seminoles yet remain in Florida, and refuse to go. They are dangerous and troublesome neighbors.

24. Nearly all that are left of these seven Indian nations are now in the country west of the Mississippi, between the Red and Missouri rivers. Their present country, as you will see by the map, is now called INDIAN TERRITORY. I fear it will not be theirs a great while, for white people are already going there, and will crowd the Indians out, I expect.

25. The eighth nation is composed of the northern and southern Sioux, who are sometimes called Dacotahs. When the French people went into their country, two hundred years ago,

QUESTIONS.—19. What can you tell of the Mobilians? 20. Where did they live? 21. What more can you tell about the Mobilians? 22. 23. What have they done, and where are they now? 24. Where are now those seven Indian nations? 25. What can you tell about the eighth nation?

---

The Northern and Western Indians.

---

there were a great many of them. It is an immense country, west of the Mississippi, extending from the Arkansas river on the south to Lake Winnipeg on the north, and westward to the foot of the Rocky Mountains.

26. The northern tribes in particular, are very fierce and war-like, and have always been fighting each other. They all yet remain in the country where they were first found, because the white people have not wanted it. But the white man will soon tell them to go further west, into the wilderness, because he wishes to raise grain, and build villages and cities where their cabins and wigwams now stand. And they will go.

27. Away beyond the Rocky Mountains on the shores of the Pacific Ocean, from Mexico on the south, to the northern line of Washington Territory, there are scattered tribes of Indians, some of whom are very weak and few, while others are strong and many.

28. These occasionally try to beat off the white people who settle among them, but they always get badly beaten themselves. Year after year, these, as well as all of the other Indians in America are becoming fewer, and, as I said before, you may live until not a live Indian can be found.

29. I hope you have looked at the map attentively, while I have been telling you about the Indians. If you have, you will know much that is useful, because these very Indians, many of them, will be mentioned again in the course of my story. And when you are older, and come to learn more of them in a larger book, you will be glad that you were attentive now.

QUESTIONS.—26. What of the northern tribes? 27. What can you tell of the western Indians? 28. What is their fate?

## CHAPTER II.

### THE GREAT SAILORS OR DISCOVERERS.

#### SECTION I.

##### THE GREAT SAILORS FROM SPAIN.

---

The trade with India desired.

---

1. ALMOST four hundred years ago, before there were any white people in America, there was a good young man named Christopher Columbus. He was born in Genoa, a city in Italy in the southern part of Europe. He studied hard at school, was much pleased with stories about the sea, and when he was old enough, he became a sailor.

2. At that time merchants, or store-keepers, in Italy, who lived near the sea, sent ships and traded with the people of that part of Asia called India, and became very rich. Their neighbors in Western Europe, especially in Spain and Portugal, wished to trade with them too. But the Italians were selfish and strong, and would not let the ships of their neighbors sail eastward in the Mediterranean Sea.

3. What must be done? Look on the map, and I will tell you what *was* done. Some bold sailors went in ships around the southern part of Africa, which is called the Cape of Good Hope, and then sailed across the Indian Ocean to India. But this was a very long way to go from Portugal and Spain.

4. Columbus thought a great deal about the matter. He had been in a ship away up in the ocean at the north, where there is ice all summer, at an island called Iceland. I think

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about Columbus? 2. What did Italian merchants do? 3. What did some bold sailors do? 4. What can you tell about North America?

The ideas of Columbus.

His efforts and trials.



NORTHMAN.

he must have heard of some rough sailors of that cold country called Northmen, who, it is said, came over to America five hundred years before, in queer shaped vessels.

5. Columbus had also got the idea into his head that the earth was round like an orange, and not flat like a cake, as every body then thought it was. He thought that if the earth was

round, India could be reached by sailing westward across the Atlantic Ocean, as well as sailing eastward; and he believed it could not be half as far to it in that direction as around the Cape of Good Hope.

6. Columbus went to Lisbon, in Portugal, and told the king and other great people, what was in his mind. The king thought well of it, but most of the great people who did not know half as much as Columbus did, laughed at him, and he went away very sorrowful.



COLUMBUS.

7. Columbus was poor. He had a little son named Diego, whose mother was dead. So he took his boy by the hand and started on foot for Spain, to ask the rich king of that country to let him have a ship with which to sail westward on the Atlantic Ocean in search of India.

8. Ferdinand, the King of Spain, had an excellent wife, named Isabella, who loved God and her fellow-creatures. Columbus was a Christian, and thought that he could tell the people of new countries that he might find in searching



NORTHMAN'S SHIP.

QUESTIONS.—5. What thoughts had Columbus? 6. What was done in Portugal? 7. What did Columbus do? 8. What can you tell about the Queen of Spain?

---

Departure of Columbus for America.

The Discovery.

---

for India, about Jesus and the Bible, and the Gospel, and so do them good.

9. Columbus told Queen Isabella all that he would like to do, in searching for India and helping the heathen. Her heart was kind, and his words brought tears to her eyes. She promised to help him even if she had to sell all the diamonds in her crown to buy a ship for him. She spoke to her husband about it. He was willing, and she fitted out two small vessels for Columbus.

10. The great sailor was now full fifty years of age, and every body thought well of him, because he had always acted right. His friends fitted out another ship, larger than those of the queen, and with plenty of company, Columbus left the town of Palos, on the Tinto river, on the 3d day of August, in the year 1492.



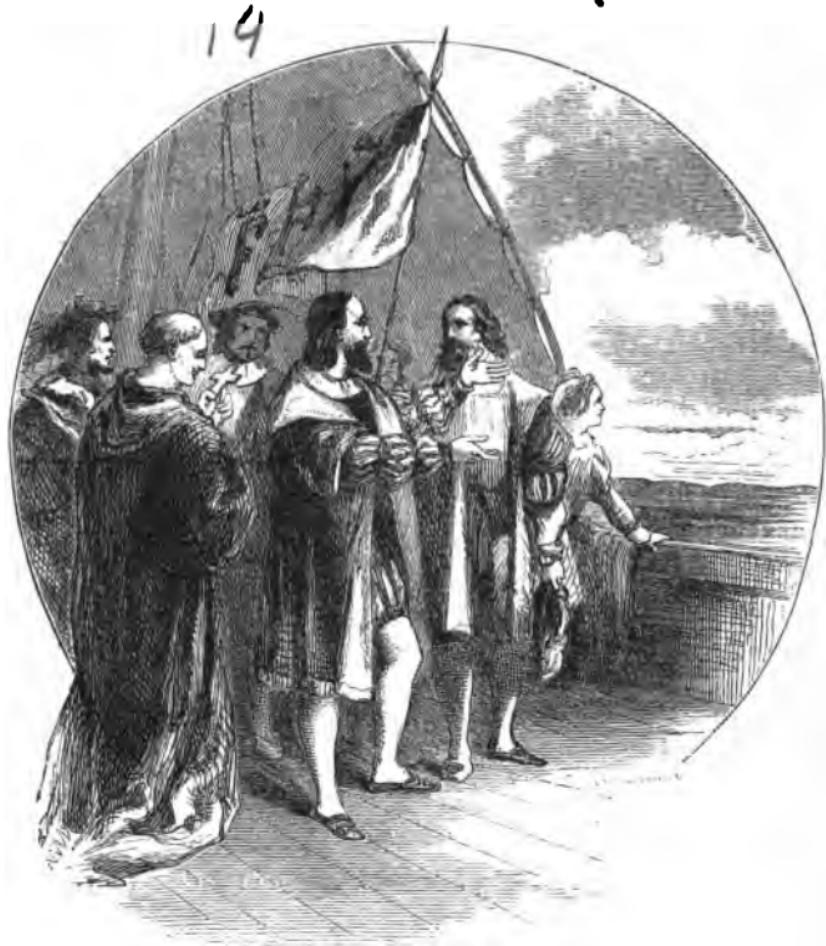
THE VESSELS OF COLUMBUS.

11. It was a hot summer day when Columbus and his men sailed down the river. But when they were out on the ocean, the breeze was cool and delightful. They were soon out of sight of land, and could see nothing but water, and sky, and clouds.

12. They sailed on and on, week after week, and saw nothing but the water, and the sky, and the clouds. All but Columbus grew afraid, and wanted to go back. The common sailors even threatened to throw him overboard if he would not turn back. He trusted in God, and kept on unharmed.

13. Just at sunset on a pleasant day in October, Columbus felt sure that land was nigh. During the evening the perfumes of flowers came to his nostrils. The great sailor watched all night. In the morning all saw green forests, and soon they heard the singing of birds.

QUESTIONS.—9. What did Isabella do? 10. What did Columbus then do? 12. What happened on the ocean? 13. What can you tell about seeing land?



COLUMBUS DISCOVERING LAND.

14. The sailors who were so afraid and so wicked, now joined with Columbus in praising God. All went on shore, among the beautiful shrubs and sweet flowers, and there on their knees they sang a hymn of thanksgiving to God.

15. They were on an island not very far from the continent of America. They saw men, women, and children, hiding among the trees and bushes. These were very timid, for they had never seen white people before. As I have told you—[verse 2, page

QUESTIONS.—14. What did all who were with Columbus do? 15. What can you tell about the landing of Columbus?

## Other discoveries.

## Americus Vespuclius

7]—Columbus thought this island was a part of India, so he called the copper-colored people, INDIANS. The island he named San Salvador, the Spanish words for Holy Saviour.

16. Columbus found other islands in the neighborhood, and these, as you will see by the map, were afterwards named West Indies. When he went back to Spain, he took some Indians, and parrots, and other things with him. Then King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella were so pleased with the great sailor, that they made him rich and strong.

17. Soon after Columbus went back, another Italian, named Americus Vespuclius, came over the Atlantic Ocean with one of Columbus's great sailors, named Ojeda. He visited the West India Islands, sailed southward, and discovered the American continent, near the mouth of the Oronoco river. It was an easy matter after Columbus had led the way.

18. Some people said to Columbus, "It was easy to find America." He asked them to make an egg stand on its end. They tried in vain. Columbus cracked one end of his, so made it flat, and it stood. Then they did the same. "It is easy enough when I have told you how," said the great sailor. Then they all felt ashamed.

19. When Americus returned, he wrote a letter, which was printed in a book. It told of what he had discovered, and he claimed the honor of first seeing this New World. Columbus, in another voyage, had seen it at the same place

COLUMBUS ON SAN SALVADOR.

AMERICUS VESPUCIUS.



QUESTIONS.—16. What did Columbus then do? 17. Who else came to America? 18. What can you tell about Columbus and the eggs? 19. Why was the New World called America?

---

How America was named.

Ponce de Leon.

Spanish adventurers.

---

in South America, a year sooner. But he was not allowed to tell the world what he had discovered, so this wonderful country was named America, in honor of Americus Vespuclius.

20. Many Spanish people now came to live in Cuba and other West India Islands. Among these was an old man named Ponce de Leon. He was very proud, and did not wish to die. He was told that on an island north-west from Cuba, there was a spring whose waters would make him young again, and keep him so.

21. In the spring of the year he sailed in a ship, in search of that island. He sought in vain, but finally he discovered a land

that seemed full of flowers, and partly on that account he named it FLORIDA. That was twenty years after Columbus made his first voyage. It was our pleasant Florida.

22. Other Spaniards went to the same country afterward, and going westward, discovered the Mississippi river. Others again went up the coast into the present Carolinas; and some warriors sailed to Mexico, and took possession of that country. They all treated the kind Indians most shamefully. Of these warriors and their deeds you will learn more when you grow older.



A SPANISH WARRIOR.

---

## SECTION II.

### THE GREAT SAILORS FROM ENGLAND AND FRANCE.

1. When it was known in Europe that a new world had been found beyond the Atlantic Ocean, the kings and merchants made a great ado about it. In Spain, Portugal, France, Holland, Italy, and England, the people talked about it a great deal.

QUESTIONS.—20. What can you tell of Ponce de Leon? 21. What did he find? 22. What did other Spaniards do? 1. What did finding a new world produce?

## Cabot's voyages.

## Cabot's discoveries.

¶ 2. Henry, the King of England, who refused to listen to Columbus before his first voyage, was now glad to do all he could to assist John Cabot and others, who were merchants in Bristol, in sending ships across the Atlantic in search of new countries.

¶ 3. Four years and a half after Columbus made his first voyage, John Cabot prepared two ships, and with these, his son Sebastian sailed. He was a young man about twenty years of age. At first he sailed toward Greenland; then he turned southward, and in the course of a few weeks he came in sight of the rugged shores of Labrador, and saw many icebergs floating in the sea.

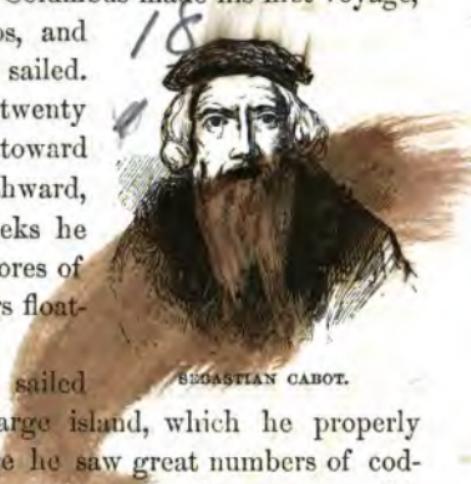
¶ 4. Cabot did not land, but sailed southward, and discovered a large island, which he properly named NEW-FOUND-LAND. There he saw great numbers of cod-fish, which are yet abundant in the sea in that region. He landed at several places, and then sailed to England to tell his countrymen of the new world he had found.

5. Sebastian Cabot crossed the Atlantic Ocean the next year, and sailed all along America from the icy coasts of Labrador to the sunny shores of our Carolinas. He was the first discoverer of North America, for this voyage along the shores of the United States was made about fourteen years before Ponce de Leon, of whom I have told you [verse 20, p. 22], landed in Florida.

6. Sebastian was a very great sailor, and was upon the ocean nearly all his life. He sailed all along the coast of Brazil, in South America, discovered the great river La Plata, and went on its bosom in a boat four hundred miles up into the broad wilderness. He was an old man, with a large white beard, when he died.

7. After Cabot had told of the many codfish near Newfoundland, bold sailors went from England, Brittany, and Normandy,

QUESTIONS.—2. What did the King of England do? 3. Who sailed to America from England, and how? 4. What did Cabot discover? 5. What else did he do? 6. What other discoveries did Cabot make? 7. What did other sailors do?



SEBASTIAN CABOT.

## Verrazzani and his discoveries.

## Cartier's voyages.

to catch them. The fish were so very numerous that the sailors soon filled their little vessels with them and went home.

8. Some of the fishermen had seen the neighboring coasts of Nova Scotia, and the stories they told of the beautiful land there, got to the ears of Francis, the first French king of that name.

9. At that time there was a great sailor in France, who came from Florence. His name was John Verrazzani. The king fitted out four vessels, with plenty of men and provisions, and sent Verrazzani with them to explore the coasts of America along which Cabot had sailed.

10. Three of Verrazzani's ships were injured by a storm, and he crossed the Atlantic with only one. He first reached the coast of our North Carolina, and then he went into almost every bay from there to Newfoundland. He talked a great deal with the Indians who came out of the woods to see him and his *big canoe*, as they called his ship. He named the whole country NEW FRANCE.



CARTIER'S SHIP.

11. Four years afterward, another great sailor, named James Cartier, came from France to this New World. He first landed at Newfoundland, afterward he sailed into a great gulf and the mouth of a very large river, and then returned to France.

12. Cartier came back in another ship the next year, and sailed up that great river to a town which the Indians called *Hochelaga*. He named the gulf and the river, St. Lawrence. The Indian town he called Mont Real, or Royal Mountain, because there was a high mountain just behind it.

13. That river, you know, is between the United States and Canada, a part of the way, and Montreal is now a large city. From that place Cartier wickedly carried away the King of the Indians, whom he coaxed to go on board of his ship. He took

QUESTIONS.—8. What was discovered? 9. What was done in France? 10. Tell about Verrazzani's voyage. 11. What other French sailor came to America, and what did he see? 12. What did Cartier afterward do? 13. What wicked thing did he do?

## War in France.

## The Huguenots.

## Settlement in America.

him to France, where the poor man died of a broken heart, when thinking he should never see his wife and children again.

14. A few other French sailors came to explore America soon afterward. But the French king had his hands so full of business at home, because his people had commenced fighting each other, that he paid no more attention to fitting out ships to sail to America.

15. And what do you think the French people quarreled and fought about? It was religion!—the religion of Jesus Christ, who said, "Love your enemies." One believed something which the other did not, and so they quarreled and fought about it, and many were killed. +



FRENCHMAN IN 1562.

16. There was a great and good man in France, named Coligny. He loved the people called Huguenots, whom the Roman Catholics hated, and very frequently injured. Coligny seeing his friends in continual danger, thought it would be nice for all of them to go to America, where the Roman Catholics could not hurt them.

17. So Coligny helped a good many of them to fit out ships. They came over in the spring of 1562, or about three hundred years ago. They landed in Florida, near where Ponce de Leon did, when he gave it that name. It was near our St. Augustine, the oldest town in the United States.

18. The Huguenots did not like the spot, and sailed northward to Carolina. But these nearly all perished. Two years afterward some more came, and lived in tents on the coast of Florida, while they were building a fort.

19. The Spaniards claimed Florida as theirs, because Ponce de Leon, a Spaniard, first saw it. Melendez, a cruel warrior, went there with many soldiers, and murdered almost a thousand of the French settlers, chiefly because he and his men, and his king, did not believe what the Frenchmen did in religion.

QUESTIONS.—14, 15. What now happened in France? 16. What can you tell about the Huguenots? 17. What did the Huguenots do? 18. What happened to them? 19. What did the Spaniards do?

Revenge of the French.

Queen Elizabeth and the Huguenots.



FRENCH SOLDIER IN  
FLORIDA.

20. When this cruel murder was known in France, a brave soldier, named De Gourges, sailed to America with many others, and killed nearly all of the Spaniards. So the white people were in Florida no more. The first white settlement in America was broken up, and the Indians had the whole country to themselves again, for a long time.

21. Some of the great English sailors supposed they could get to India by going northwest, not dreaming that they would find the ocean in that direction continually covered with ice. So, many years after Cabot discovered North America, Martin Frobisher and others crossed the Atlantic to find a northwest passage, and to seek gold in the rough soil of Labrador. They found neither, were discouraged, and went no more.

22. When a very remarkable woman, named Elizabeth, was the Queen of England, she and her great men heard of the beautiful region of our North and South Carolina. Some of the Huguenots, who escaped the massacre by the Spaniards, went to sea in a boat. They were picked up and carried to England, and they told the queen all about that fine country.

23. Queen Elizabeth was wonderfully delighted, and said her great sailors would do better to go there with people to plant corn than to go to cold Labrador to dig for gold they would not find. So God caused these poor Frenchmen to turn the minds of the English toward the beautiful middle regions of America.

24. At that time there was an intelligent and worthy young Englishman, named Walter Raleigh,



WALTER RALEIGH.

QUESTIONS.—20. What did a French soldier do? 21. What did other English sailors try to do? 22. What can you tell of a Queen of England? 23. What did Queen Elizabeth say? 24. What can you tell about Walter Raleigh and his step-brother?

Raleigh and Gilbert's expeditions.

Gilbert's death.

whom the queen thought a great deal of. His step-brother, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, was one of her great English sailors, and had often thought it would be a fine thing to go to the beautiful Carolina region with a number of people, to build houses, raise grain, and live there.

**25.** Gilbert spoke of the matter to Raleigh, who seems to have had the most money. The young man was delighted with the idea, and asked the queen's permission. She readily granted it, and early in the year 1579 they both started for America. Storms and Spanish enemies soon drove them back, and they gave up the voyage.

**26.** Four years afterward Gilbert started again, but did not reach Carolina. He was at Newfoundland awhile, and then started for home. A dreadful storm arose, beat upon the ship he was in, and at midnight it went to the bottom of the sea with Gilbert and all on board.

**27.** Raleigh was much grieved at the loss of his step-brother. But he was a man of courage. He had a good deal of money left, so he fitted out two more ships to carry people to America. They were commanded by two great sailors, named Amidas and Barlow.

**28.** It was in the hot month of July when Raleigh's ships reached the Carolina coast. The people in them landed on an island which the Indians called Roanoke. They traded with the Indians for several weeks, and then returned to England. Two Indian chiefs who wished to see the world went to England with them.

**29.** Queen Elizabeth and Raleigh were delighted with the stories which Amidas and Barlow told them, about the beautiful Roanoke

ENGLISH GENTLEMAN,  
1589.

QUESTIONS.—25. What did Raleigh and Gilbert do? 26. What happened to Gilbert afterward? 27. What did Raleigh then do? 28. What can you tell about the English at Roanoke? 29. How came that region to be called Virginia?



RALEIGH'S SHIP.



---

 Grenville's expedition.

Tobacco.

 Peril of the settlers.

---

and the main land near by. The queen called the whole country **VIRGINIA**. You remember Verrazzani had named the whole country **NEW FRANCE**, sixty years before. [See verse 10, page 24.]

30. Queen Elizabeth gave the use of the whole country to Walter Raleigh, and he expected to make a large fortune by sending settlers to that fine region, for he was to share in all the profits that might be made in raising grain and digging gold. So the very next year, as soon as the trees were in blossom, Raleigh sent another great English sailor, named Sir Richard Grenville, with seven ships, to carry people to settle in America.

31. Grenville and his party reached Roanoke in June. The Indians were right glad to see their two chiefs come back again. These Indians were a remarkable people. They lived in arched-roofed houses, and had fine gardens, and fields of corn and tobacco.

32. The white people never before saw tobacco. The Indians taught them to smoke it, but the more filthy practice of chewing it they learned themselves. I hope the boy who reads this, will never use tobacco in any way. Smoking it is better than chewing it; but he who smokes it finds that

"It robs his pocket, soils his clothes,  
And makes a chimney of his nose."

33. The Indians treated the English well, but were used so badly in turn that they determined to kill them all. At this time Grenville went back to England with the ships, and the angry Indians prepared to murder all the settlers.

34. Sir Francis Drake soon afterward arrived, in a large ship. He was one of the greatest war-sailors England ever had, and was the first Englishman who sailed around the world. The settlers went on board his ship and returned to England. Others were landed there afterward, but they were all murdered by the angry Indians.

35. Finally quite a number of men and women were sent over

**QUESTIONS.**—30. What did the queen and Raleigh do? 31. What can you tell about the Indians? 32. What can you say about tobacco? 33. How did the Indians behave? 34. Who came to Roanoke? and what happened to the settlers?

## Little Virginia Dare.

## Efforts of other English sailors.

## The French.

by Raleigh, to make a settlement. A man named John White was their governor. He went back to England for a good purpose, and was kept there many years.

36. Mr. White had a daughter married to a man named Darc. Before he left for England she had a beautiful little babe, which she named Virginia. She was the first English child born in America. When Mr. White went back to Roanoke, his daughter, and sweet little Virginia Dare, and all the rest were gone. I don't think they were murdered. I suspect they went far away in the country, and lived with the Indians.

37. Raleigh was now tired of trying to settle America. His money was nearly all gone, and he sent no more ships. He lived a great many years afterward, and wrote a History of the World while in a prison. He was put in prison by a very bad King of England named James. Raleigh was a good old man, and yet that wicked king, after keeping him a great many years in prison, caused his head to be cut off.

38. In the year 1602, Bartholomew Gosnold, another great English sailor, came across the Atlantic, and explored the coast from Boston to Newport. He saw a great many codfish near a low, sandy point south-east of Boston, and he named it Cape Cod. I wish you to remember this cape, for I shall speak of it again by-and-by.

39. Other great English sailors came to the same region soon afterward, and two of them explored the present coast of Maine. One of them wickedly carried off some Indians in his ship, and all their friends were made very angry against the white people.

40. It was now more than a hundred years since Columbus revealed the New World to Europe, and yet there was not a settlement of white people in all this broad land. One was made soon afterward, on the river St. Lawrence, by some French people, who named the place Quebec. They came with Samuel

QUESTIONS.—35. What can you tell of others? 36. What can you tell about little Virginia Dare and her mother? 37. What more can you tell of Raleigh? 38. What can you tell of another great English sailor? 39. And what of others? 40. What can you tell about settlements in America?

## Acadie.

## Quebec.

## Henry Hudson.

Champlain, a great French sailor, who discovered the lake of that name, in the northern part of the State of New York.

41. A little earlier, some French people had attempted to settle in Nova Scotia, and they named that country Acadie. They were compelled to leave it, but the settlement at Quebec remained. That is the oldest permanent settlement of Europeans in North America.

42. The English having failed in their attempts to make settlements in America, several London merchants concluded to employ some great sailor to make another effort to find a northwest passage to India. They employed a famous man named Henry Hudson. He sailed twice in that direction, but like others before him, he could not get through the ice, so the London merchants gave it up.

43. Hudson was a proud man. He was very anxious to be the first sailor who should reach India by a northern route. At that time there were a number of merchants in Holland who had joined together to trade in India. They were called the Dutch East India Company.

44. Hudson went to Amsterdam to see the managers of that Company. He told them that he firmly believed that he could reach India by going around the north of Europe, instead of the north of America. They liked the idea, and fitted out a small vessel, called the *Half-moon*, for him to sail in. He went away up into the Arctic Ocean, where he found just as much ice as in the other direction. He was too proud to return without doing something great; so he turned westward, after passing Iceland, and steered across the Atlantic.

45. The great sailor first saw America on the coast of Maine. He then sailed southward to the Capes of Virginia, and explored

QUESTIONS.—41. What about French settlements? 42. What did London merchants do? 43. What can you tell about Henry Hudson and the Dutch? 44. What did Hudson do? 45. What were Hudson's first discoveries?



## Discovery of the Hudson river.

## Fate of Hudson.

the bays and rivers northward until he entered the waters which now form the harbor of New York.

46. Hudson saw a great river rolling down from among the blue hills at the north, and he sailed up that stream more than one hundred and sixty miles. He had many adventures with the Indians, who had never seen a white man, nor such a "big canoe" before. That stream now bears the name of Hudson's river.

47. When Hudson returned to Europe, and told of the immense and beautiful country which he had discovered, the people of Holland, who were great traders, began at once to send ships to Hudson's river to traffic with the Indians. I shall tell you more about that presently.

48. Hudson tried once again to find a north-west passage. In so doing, he discovered the bay in the far north which bears his name. There he lost his life. Some of his sailors were very wicked. They bound Hudson and his son with strong ropes, and putting them in a little boat, with seven sick companions, they sailed off with the ship and left them. Hudson and his companions all perished with cold or hunger, on that icy sea.

49. I have now told you the story of the Great Sailors, and I hope you have been interested. With Hudson's voyage, their work was made complete. Then the coasts of the New World had been explored from the West India Islands to the Gulf of St. Lawrence. The way was prepared for settlements, and soon hundreds of people came from Europe, and commenced cutting down trees, erecting houses and churches, raising grain and fruit, and building villages and cities. We must always love the Great Sailors for finding such a beautiful country as ours.

QUESTIONS.—46. What can you tell about Hudson's greatest discovery? 47. What effect did his discoveries have? 48. What happened to him afterward? 49. What had the Great Sailors now accomplished?

## CHAPTER III.

### SECTION I.

#### THE ADVENTURERS OR SETTLERS.

---

Difference between a settlement and a colony.

---

1. I HOPE you remember what I have told you about the GREAT SAILORS. They should be thought of frequently, as we go on in our story, because they opened the way to this beautiful land for people to come and settle in. Now I shall tell you about the ADVENTURERS OR SETTLERS.

2. I must first explain to you the difference between a settlement and a colony. You know people may go from your neighborhood, away into the wilderness, and there cut down trees and build houses. This is called a settlement. But the Indians, or sickness, or some other thing, may cause them to move away. Then that place is no longer a settlement. Just so, you remember, it was with the English on Roanoke [verse 36, page 29], and the Huguenots in Florida [verse 18, page 25].

3. When a settlement becomes permanent, and the people make laws, plow fields, build villages, and so on, and continue to live in one place always, then the Adventurers who made the settlement become Planters, and form a colony.

4. I am now going to tell you what Adventurers did in making settlements in many parts of this country, and how they afterward became Planters and formed colonies. It took some of the settlements ten years, and some twenty years, to become colonies, while one of them was about sixty years in so doing. I will first tell you of

QUESTIONS.—2. Can you explain the difference between a settlement and a colony?  
3. What is a colony? 4. How long did it take some settlements to become colonies?

## ADVENTURERS IN VIRGINIA.

5. Because of the discoveries of their Great Sailors, the English claimed a right to settle anywhere in America between the mouth of the Cape Fear river in North Carolina, and the town of Halifax in Nova Scotia. They allowed the Spaniards to have the country all south of that, and the Frenchmen all north of it.

6. You remember [verse 29, page 27] Queen Elizabeth gave the name of VIRGINIA to that whole territory. When she died, a Scotchman, named James Stuart, who was a king in his own country, became King of England, and a very mean and unlovely man he was. But he did some good things.

7. That vast country claimed by the English was divided into North and South Virginia. Quite a number of men in the town of Plymouth, England, joined together for the purpose of making settlements in North Virginia. The king gave them a written agreement, in which he promised to let them have the use of all that country if they would agree to do so and so. They were called the *Plymouth or North Virginia Company.*

8. A number of men in London joined together in the same way, to settle in South Virginia. The king gave them a similar paper, and they made a similar agreement with the king. They were called the *London or South Virginia Company.* These papers given by the king were called *Charters.* Remember that word, and its meaning—an agreement.

9. The Plymouth Company first tried to make settlements in their part of America, but failed. The London Company soon afterward collected together more than a hundred Adventurers, fitted out three good ships for them to sail in, and then sent a great sailor, named Newport, to conduct them to the island of Roanoke, where, you remember [verse 30, page 28], Walter Raleigh tried to make a settlement more than twenty years before. This was at the close of the year 1606.

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell about the claims of the English? 6. What can you say of a new King of England? 7. How was America divided by the English? 8. What can you tell of two companies in England? 9. What did these companies do?

Arrival of Adventurers.Captain Smith.Troubles in Virginia.

10. A heavy storm drove the ships of the Adventurers away to the northward, and they entered the mouth of a great river, after passing two capes at the entrance to Chesapeake Bay. To please the king, they named the great river James, and the two capes Charles and Henry, after his two sons.

11. The Adventurers sailed more than fifty miles up that river, and landed on a sort of island. Every thing appeared beautiful, for it was in warm April weather, and the earth and trees were covered with flowers and blossoms. There they commenced building a village, which they called Jamestown.



JOHN SMITH.

12. Captain John Smith, a very great soldier, of whom you have heard, I dare-say, was one of the Adventurers. He had been in many fights with the Turks in eastern Europe, and had done wonderful things there. Many of the Adventurers were rather bad characters, and they became jealous of Captain Smith, for they knew he was smarter and better than they.

13. Smith was accused of wrong intentions during the voyage, and was put in prison on board the ship. When the Adventurers landed, they proceeded, according to King James's orders, to open a sealed box, which he had given them. Then it was found that the king had appointed Captain Smith to be one of the governors of the settlement. Greatly fearing the king's displeasure, they set him at liberty, and for many years Captain Smith was the greatest and best man in the New World.

14. Newport sailed for England in June, 1607, for more Adventurers and provisions. Soon after he left, the provisions of the settlers became scarce, and the poisonous vapors which arose from the swamps near by, made a great many sick. Before the close of summer, full one half of the Adventurers died, and were buried in the ground at Jamestown.

QUESTIONS.—10. What happened to the Adventurers in Newport's ships? 11. What did they do? 12. What can you say of John Smith and his companions? 13. What had been done to Captain Smith? 14. What happened to the settlers?

---

Smith in captivity.His life saved by Pocahontas.

---

15. Every one now began to think of death and starvation, for the Indians had not received them very kindly, and would not bring them food. The man whom the Adventurers had chosen to be their chief ruler, was a very bad one, and it was not long before they asked Captain Smith to take his place.

16. Smith soon made the Indians respect him, and bring food for his companions. He now resolved to know more of the country he was in. He had already been up the James River to the Falls at Richmond, and had seen a large stream coming in from the north, just above Jamestown. With a few companions he went up that stream, which the Indians called Chickahominy. While away from his boat, in the woods, some of the Indians, who had been watching the white people, sprang forward and made Captain Smith a prisoner.

17. The great Emperor of the Indians was called Powhatan. Captain Smith was taken from one Indian village to another, so that the women and children might see him. Then he was conducted to the dwelling of the emperor on the York river. He was kindly treated; but when the great men around Powhatan had talked the matter all over, they concluded to kill him.

18. A huge stone was placed before Powhatan, on which the head of Captain Smith was laid. His hands were tied behind him, and he could not stir. Then two strong Indians raised each a heavy club to kill him, and there appeared no help for him.

19. Powhatan had a beautiful daughter, ten or twelve years old, named Pocahontas. She sat by the side of her father, who loved her very much. She was a good girl, and pitied poor Captain Smith. Just as the Indians raised their clubs to kill him, she leaped from her seat, clasped the head of the captive in her arms, and begged her father to spare his life. Pocahontas was an angel of deliverance, for Powhatan not only gave Smith his life, but sent a guard of twelve men to conduct him back to his friends at Jamestown.

20. During his captivity Smith learned much that was useful

QUESTIONS.—15. What were the troubles of the settlers? 16. What did Smith do? What happened to him? 17. What did the Indians do with Smith? 18. What occurred before Powhatan? 19. How was Smith's life saved?



---

Smith's exploring voyage.First women in Virginia.

---

to him, about the Indians and their country. But he was grieved to find every thing in confusion at Jamestown, and only forty of his companions alive. These were just preparing to leave, but he caused them to remain, and by his own exertions he procured food enough from the Indians, for them all.

21. Newport arrived with more Adventurers and provisions, the following spring. Then Smith started, in an open boat, to explore the Chesapeake Bay. He visited every bay and river along its coasts; and, on foot, he went up into the wilderness as far as the country of the Five Nations in the southern part of New York.

22. Altogether this was one of the most wonderful voyages I have ever read about. Smith and his companions were gone three months, and traveled about three thousand miles. That is the distance across the Atlantic Ocean, from New York to London.

23. A pleasant thing happened not long after Smith's return. Some more adventurers came from England, and with them, two women; the first from Europe ever seen in Virginia. They were very good women, but I am sorry I can not say the same of the men. Most of those who were in Virginia, were very lazy. They would not raise grain for food, but looked for gold, or did nothing, day after day.

24. Smith coaxed the Indians to give the white people food, or they would have all starved. Finally, when he went to England on account of being badly hurt, the Indians not only refused to let the white people have food, but laid a plan to kill them all. The good and beautiful Pocahontas, like a divine angel, went to Jamestown, told the Adventurers what the Indians thought of doing, and so made them prepared to defend themselves.

25. The Indians did not attack the people at Jamestown. After awhile, an English sailor, named Argall, who was a sort of

QUESTIONS.—20. What can you tell about Smith's return? What did he do? 21. What can you tell about his exploring voyage? 22. What about that voyage? 23. What pleasant thing now happened? What can you say about the men in Virginia? 24. What more can you tell of the goodness of Pocahontas?

Pocahontas a prisoner.Marriage of Pocahontas.

sea-robber, came there, coaxed Pocahontas on board of his ship, and kept her a prisoner for a long time. Her father was greatly grieved. But the robber would not let her go until her father sent plenty of food to the half-starving Adventurers.

26. And now another pleasant thing occurred. While Pocahontas was on the ship, a young Englishman, named John Rolfe,

27



MARRIAGE OF POCOHONTAS.

fell in love with her. She became a Christian, was baptized, and married Rolfe. This made her father a good friend of the English as long as he lived.

QUESTIONS.—25. What can you tell about Argall and Pocahontas? 26. What other pleasant thing now happened?

---

Death of Pocahontas.Dutch traders in America.

---

27. Pocahontas went to England with her husband not long afterward, and died there, just as she was about to sail back to her native land. We should always remember that good Indian princess with gratitude.

28. After that, things went on much better in Virginia. A great many other Adventurers came over, and they were good and industrious people. They tilled the land, did not spend their time in foolishly looking for gold, and raised plenty of food.

29. The settlement soon became so strong that the people did not fear the Indians, and those who came to stay a little while, and then return to England, resolved to stay as long as they lived. In the year 1619, they met together to make laws. Then the Virginia *settlement* became a *colony*.

---

## SECTION II.

## ADVENTURERS IN NEW YORK.

1. I have told you [verse 47, page 31] that when Henry Hudson let the Dutch people, who lived in Holland, know about the beautiful land he had found in the New World, they sent ships with people there to trade with the Indians, who caught bears, beavers, otters, and other fur-bearing animals. Among other ships, the *Half-moon*, Hudson's exploring vessel, was sent for that purpose. That was in 1610, or about two hundred and fifty years ago.

2. One of the greatest of the Dutch sailors who came to America at that time was Adrian Block. He brought several Adventurers with him, and landed on the lower end of the island which the Indians called Manhattan. There the city of New York now stands.

QUESTIONS.—27. What more can you tell about Pocahontas? 28. What can you say about other Adventurers? 29. What did the settlers now do? 1. What did the Dutch people do? 2. What can you tell about a great Dutch sailor?

---

The first ship-building.

West India Company.

First settlers.

3. Block's ship took fire and was destroyed, just at the commencement of a cold winter, in 1613. The Adventurers built themselves huts to sleep in, and worked hard every day all winter, in building a new ship. It was completed in the spring, and then they explored the coast from New York to Halifax. That was the first ship ever built in the United States, and was named the *Unrest*.

4. Many other Adventurers came soon afterward, and some went up Hudson's river as far as the spot where Albany now stands. In that neighborhood, and on the lower part of Manhattan island, a fort and trading-houses were built soon afterward. The whole country which the English called North Virginia, the Dutch now named NEW NETHERLAND.

5. A few years later, some Holland merchants formed the Dutch West India Company, and the rulers of their land gave them the privilege of making settlements anywhere in America, and in some parts of southern Africa.

6. Although the Dutch were getting rich fast by trading with the Indians for furs, it was now thought best to have some families come over, clear the land, raise grain, build houses, and thus commence a colony.

7. It was in the spring of 1623, when thirty families, mostly French people who had lived in Holland a long time, came to Manhattan. Quite a number of them went up Hudson's river, and settled at Albany. Others remained on Manhattan, and some went across the East river, where Brooklyn and Williamsburg now are, and settled.

8. At about this time, several log houses were built at the lower end of Manhattan island, and a permanent settlement was formed in New Netherland. With these dwellings and people, and those at Albany and at Brooklyn, a colony was formed, and became prosperous. I will tell you, by-and-by, how this country came to be called New York.

QUESTIONS.—3. What happened to the Dutch Adventurers? and what did they do?  
4. What did other Adventurers do? 5. What can you tell of some Holland merchants?  
6. What was thought best? 7. Who came to Manhattan? and where did they settle?  
8. How was a colony formed?

## SECTION III.

## ADVENTURERS. IN MASSACHUSETTS.

1. I have told you [verse 7, page 33] how the Plymouth Company was formed. They sent a great sailor, named Pring, to prepare the way for settlements in North Virginia. The next spring, Sir George Popham (who was one of the company), and a hundred Adventurers, came over to settle. Many did not like the country, and more than half of them went back in the same ship. Those who remained suffered so much the next winter, that they also went back to England.

2. Eight years afterward, the famous Captain John Smith, who helped to settle Virginia, came over with two vessels, and explored the American coast from Cape Cod to the Penobscot river. He made a good map of the country, showed it to the king's eldest son, Charles, and by his permission, he named the whole region east of Hudson's river, NEW ENGLAND.

3. Captain Smith was a just man, but his comrades were not always so. The commander of one of his ships carried off twenty Indians, and sold them for slaves in Spain. This made the Indians in New England very angry toward all white people.

4. It was not until the year 1620 that a permanent settlement was formed in New England. The king, that year, gave the Plymouth Company a new charter, and they prepared to make settlements in their own way. But this was not permitted by the good and wise God.

5. Instead of Adventurers whose chief desire was to make money, others, who sought for a place where they might worship God as they pleased, were allowed to become the permanent settlers of that portion of New England known as Massachusetts. I will tell you how it was, and who they were.

QUESTIONS.—1. What did the Plymouth Company do? What can you tell of settlers who came to America? 2. What did Captain Smith do? 3. What did Smith's companions do? 4. When was New England first settled? 5. By whom?

## The Roman Catholics.

## The Pope.

## Origin of the Puritans.

6. Very Earnest people, you know, believe that their way of worshiping God is the best way, and they try to make every body else believe and act as they do. There was a bad King of England, named Henry the Eighth, who was a Roman Catholic. He got angry with the Pope of Rome one day, because he would not allow him to do a wicked thing. After that, King Henry would have nothing more to do with the pope.

7. The Pope of Rome, you know, is the principal bishop or head minister of all the Roman Catholics in the world. Well, the people of England were glad when the king quarreled with the pope, for they thought they would now be allowed to worship God as they pleased. But King Henry commanded them to do it as he did, and they were no better off than when he was a Roman Catholic.

8. Henry's son, Edward, was a better man, and when his father died, he told the people that they might worship and the ministers might preach and pray, just as they pleased. There were two kinds of people then in England, the Roman Catholics and the Protestants. The greater part of the Protestants belonged to the Church of England which Henry had established.

9. Many people began to think that neither the Roman Catholics nor the Church of England folks were as good as they might be, and plainly said so. They would have very little to do with either of them, and tried to live so as to please God. Because they were so pure in all their words and actions the others laughed at them and, to make fun of them, called them PURITANS.

10. When Edward died, his sister Mary, who was a Roman Catholic, became Queen of England. Now there are good Roman Catholics as well as good Protestants, but Mary was a bad one. She told the people that they must worship God



QUESTIONS.—6. What can you tell about the pope and a bad King of England? 7. What can you say about the people in the matter? 8. What did Edward do? What can you tell about two kinds of people in England? 9. What can you tell about the Puritans? 10. What can you tell about Queen Mary and the Puritans?

in the same way that she did, or she would punish them. Many good Puritans and Church of England people would not obey her, and they were whipped, or driven out of the country, or were imprisoned, or hanged, or burned to death.

11. All this was stopped for awhile when her sister Elizabeth became Queen of England. She was the one who thought so much of Walter Raleigh. She was not a Roman Catholic, but, like her father, she determined to make all the people worship God according to the way of the Church of England. The Puritans, who knew it was better to obey God than the queen, would not do as she had commanded, so they were made to suffer severely.

12. When that mean man, James Stuart of Scotland, became King of England, the Puritans hoped to have better times, for he pretended to be one of them. You know the Bible says, "Put not your trust in princes." The Puritans did so, to their sorrow. As soon as James became King of England he called the Puritans hard names, and because they would not worship according to the way of the Church that Elizabeth had established, he punished them very much.

13. The Puritans endured it as long as they could, and then many of them fled to Holland and other places in Europe. A large congregation, whose minister was a good man named John Robinson, hearing that the Dutch, in Holland, allowed every body to worship God as they pleased, went there, and lived happily for some time.

14. But the Dutch people were so different from the English people that the Puritans concluded to go to America, about which they had heard a great deal in Holland. Here they hoped to be as free as the air they would breathe, or as the Indians in the woods. So they got permission of the Plymouth Company to settle somewhere in North Virginia, and the king promised to let them alone in their new home.

15. The Puritans, who felt that they were only PILGRIMS in this world, had very little money. So they formed a partnership

QUESTIONS.—11. What can you tell about Queen Elizabeth? 12. What about King James's conduct? 13. What did the Puritans do? 14. What did they do in Holland?

---

The Pilgrims on the ocean.Their written constitution.

---

with some London merchants, who fitted out two ships to convey them to America. The Puritans and the merchants were to share in all money that might be made by a settlement.

16. The Pilgrims—"the youngest and best"—left Delft-Haven, in Holland, in the summer of 1620, and went to England. They soon sailed for America, but the courage of some of them failed, and both ships went back to Plymouth.

17. Only one hundred, men, women and children finally sailed for America in one of the vessels, which they called by the beautiful name of *May-Flower*, a pretty blossom that grows in England. They were on the ocean sixty-three days, and did not reach America until cold December, when every thing was covered with snow.



MAY-FLOWER.

"They sought not gold nor guilty ease  
Upon this rock-bound shore—  
They left such priceless toys as these  
To minds that loved them more.  
They sought to breathe a freer air,  
To worship God unchained;  
They welcomed pain and danger here  
When rights like these were gained."

29



GOVERNOR CARVER'S CHAIR.

18. In the cabin of the *May-Flower*, the *Pilgrim Fathers*, as those Puritan men are called, signed an agreement that when they should get on shore, and have log houses built to live in, they would make good laws, and all would obey them.

19. Then they chose John Carver to be their governor. The plain chair in which he sat was as much a throne as the fine seat in which King James sat, all covered with silk and gold.

QUESTIONS.—15. What arrangements did the Puritans make? 16. What did they then do? 17. What can you tell about their coming to America? 18. What was done in the *May-Flower*? 19. What of Governor Carver?

20. The *May-Flower* was anchored in a fine bay, in sight of Cape Cod. Do you remember how that sandy point came to be named so? [See verse 38, page 29] Some of the boldest of the men went in a little boat to find a good landing-place. Among them was Captain Miles Standish, a small man, but a great soldier. They did not see any Indians, because a terrible pestilence had killed almost every one of them in that neighborhood. They soon found a good place. Then all the people on board the *May-Flower* landed, and they called the place New Plymouth.

21. The winter was cold, the snow was very deep, and the Pilgrim Adventurers suffered very much. Before the flowers bloomed, in the spring, the governor and his wife, and about one half of the Adventurers, died. The rest remained, cleared the ground, raised grain, and were joined by other Puritans from England. The settlement became a permanent one, and thus the colony of Massachusetts was founded.

---

## SECTION IV.

### ADVENTURERS IN NEW HAMPSHIRE.

1. You see by the map that the State of New Hampshire lies north of Massachusetts. Two years after the Pilgrims came to America, John Mason, who was the Secretary of the Plymouth Colony, and Sir Fernando Gorges, both wealthy gentlemen, obtained permission to make settlements in that more northerly region, which they named Laconia.

2. Soon afterward, parties of fishermen built log houses near the present Portsmouth and Dover. In 1629, a minister of the gospel, named Wheelwright, bought of the Indians the whole

QUESTIONS.—20. What can you tell about the landing of the Pilgrims? 21. What can you tell of the Pilgrims in America? 1. Who were permitted to settle in New Hampshire? 2. What can you tell of settlements?

---

Settlements in New Hampshire.

Lord Baltimore.

country between the Merrimac and Piscataqua rivers, and commenced a settlement at Exeter. Fishermen commenced settlements, also, along the coast of Maine, and at several places log huts were built.

3. The most of these settlements became permanent. Mr. Mason, who had been governor of Portsmouth, in Hampshire county, England, named the whole region New Hampshire. The people were too much scattered to get together to make laws, so, in 1641, they agreed to become a part of the colony of Massachusetts.

4. Forty years afterward, when the settlers became numerous, they met and made laws, chose a governor, and formed the colony of New Hampshire.

---

## SECTION V.

ADVENTURERS IN MARYLAND.

1. Now look further south on the map, and you will see the name of Maryland, between Pennsylvania and Virginia. It was called so to please King Charles the First, whose wife's middle name was Maria, or Mary.

2. I have told you how the mean King James worried the Puritans. He hated the Roman Catholics just as much, and persecuted them in many ways. There was a smart Irishman, named George Calvert, who said he was a Roman Catholic, but did not act much like one before the king. He was so much liked by King James that he made him Secretary of State. He also made him a nobleman, and called him Lord Baltimore.

3. This smart Irish lord got permission from the king to form a settlement for Roman Catholics in America. He went first to Newfoundland, but the soil was so sandy, and the French settlers

QUESTIONS.—3. What was done in 1641? 4. What can you tell about forming a colony? 1. Why was Maryland so called? 2. What can you say of Lord Baltimore?

---

Settlement of Maryland.

---

were so near, that he left, and sailed for Virginia. The Church of England people there would not allow him to settle among them; and he well knew that the Puritans would not allow him to live in New England.

4. Lord Baltimore was in a quandary. He had heard that when America was divided into North and South Virginia, a space of two hundred miles was left between them, so that the Plymouth and London Companies should have no cause for disputes about the line that separated their territories. Baltimore resolved to settle on this strip which nobody owned.

5. While Lord Baltimore was looking for a place to settle in, King James died, and his son Charles became monarch of England. Charles gave Baltimore a charter, but about that time the Irish nobleman died. His brother, Cecil Calvert, then became Lord Baltimore. The first company of Roman Catholic settlers who came to the territory of the United States, arrived in 1634. Their governor was Leonard Calvert, Lord Baltimore's brother.

6. These Adventurers sailed up the Potomac river as far as Mount Vernon, where Washington afterward lived, but they did not find a good place to commence a settlement. So they sailed down the river, and on the shores of Chesapeake Bay they landed, built log houses, and called the place St. Mary. They bought the land from the Indians, and this honesty was always remembered by those children of the forest.

7. Calvert called a meeting of the people to make laws. Within five years after these Adventurers sailed up the Potomac, the settlement had much increased, for many more Roman Catholics had crossed the Atlantic. The first Legislature—a number of men chosen by the people to make laws—met at St. Mary in 1639, and then the colony of Maryland was formed.

QUESTIONS.—3. What did Baltimore do? Who opposed him? 4. What can you tell of the region named Maryland? 5. What can you tell about its settlement? 6. What did the first Adventurers do? 7. How did the settlement grow to a colony?

## SECTION VI.

## ADVENTURERS IN CONNECTICUT.

1. The river that rises in Canada and empties into Long Island Sound, was called by the Indians Quon-eh-ta-cut, which means, in their language, The Long River. It was discovered in the spring of 1613, by Block, that great Dutch sailor who, you remember, [verse 3, page 39] built a ship where New York now stands.

2. Dutch traders went up that river soon afterward, and, near where Hartford now stands, they built a fort and trading-house. The white people spelled the name of the river as it sounded to them—Connecticut. The Puritans of New Plymouth having heard of the beautiful country through which it flowed, were very anxious to make a settlement there, before the Dutch should do so.

3. The Plymouth Company claimed this region. So they gave permission to several English gentlemen to make settlements there. Quite a number of Adventurers went up the Connecticut river in the autumn of 1633, in a sloop commanded by Captain Holmes. The Dutch well knew what they came for, and declared that they should not pass their fort. Captain Holmes declared that he would, and so he did. The Dutch grumbled about it, and the next year sent seventy men to drive the Puritans away, but they could not do it.

4. Two years after this, a company of men, women, and children traveled through the woods from Plymouth to the Connecticut river. The following winter was very cold. Many of their cattle died, and food became so scarce that the people were compelled to eat acorns that fell from the oak



FIRST MEETING-HOUSE.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about the Connecticut river? 2. What did the Dutch and Puritans do? 3. What can you tell of the troubles between the Dutch and English? 4. What can you tell of settlers from Plymouth?

trees. Some left in the spring, but many staid, and where the city of Hartford now stands, they built a small meeting-house of logs—the first ever erected in Connecticut.

5. In the summer of 1636, a very excellent minister of the Gospel, named Thomas Hooker, who lived near Boston, went away through the wilderness to Hartford, with several families, consisting of about one hundred people. These Adventurers drove cows with them, and lived upon their milk and the berries which they found on their way.

6. It was on the fourth of July when they reached Hartford, and the next Sunday they all assembled in that little first meeting-house, where Mr. Hooker preached to them. Some of the families settled there, and others went up the valley and founded Springfield and other places.

7. Just as these Adventurers were preparing to establish a permanent colony, they were called upon to endure great trouble. There was a tribe of the Algonquin nation [page 11], called Pequods, who lived east of the Connecticut river. They determined to kill all the white people, and tried to get the Narragansets, further eastward, to join them. This, Roger Williams (of whom I will tell you presently), prevented.

8. The Pequods, from time to time, murdered several white people. The Adventurers in the Connecticut valley, seeing no chance for peace with them, resolved to kill them all. The settlers in Massachusetts agreed to help them, and they got the Indians who lived on Narraganset Bay, in Rhode Island, to join them.

9. In May, 1637, full five hundred warriors, white people and Indians, were marching toward the country of the Pequods, whose great sachem and chief, Sassacus, felt no fear. He had a strong fort a few miles from the present New London, and could call around him almost two thousand warriors. But Sassacus felt stronger than he really was.

10. Captain Mason, a famous Indian fighter, commanded the

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell of other settlers from near Boston? 6. What did the new settlers do? 7. What trouble appeared? 8. What did the Indians do? 9. What preparations for war were made?

---

Destruction of the Pequods. Settlement at New Haven. Connecticut Colony.

---

army that marched against Sassacus. One morning, before daylight, he surrounded the Indian fort, set it on fire, and, when the sun arose, more than six hundred men, women, and children had perished in the flames, or by the sword and spear. Only seven escaped.

11. Sassacus was amazed; and when he heard that other soldiers were coming from Massachusetts, he fled westward with his remaining warriors, to a great swamp near Fairfield. There a severe battle was fought, and the Indians were nearly all slain. Sassacus again fled, and took refuge with the Mohawks, one of the Six Nations, where he was murdered. The whole territory of the Pequods was desolated, and the tribe was destroyed.

12. The white people who followed the Pequods in their flight, discovered the beautiful country along Long Island Sound. Adventurers soon came from Massachusetts to examine it. In the autumn they built a log hut on a little stream near a bay, and spent the winter there.

13. The next spring the Adventurers were joined by John Davenport and others. Davenport was a Gospel minister, and preached his first sermon to the people under a large oak tree. They purchased the land of the Indians, made a covenant by which they agreed to be governed, and called their settlement NEW HAVEN.

14. In the winter of 1639, the settlers in the Connecticut valley met and formed a covenant, and chose a governor. They called their settlement the CONNECTICUT COLONY. Although these and the New Haven settlements were not united under one government until twenty-six years afterward, the foundations of the colony of Connecticut were laid in these covenants made by the Adventurers in each, in 1639.

QUESTIONS.—10. What can you tell of an attack upon the Indians? 11. What about Sassacus and his warriors? 12. What did the white people discover? And what did they do? 13. What can you tell about New Haven? 14. How was the Connecticut colony formed?

## SECTION XII.

## ADVENTURERS IN RHODE ISLAND.

1. William Blackstone, the first white man who lived where Boston now stands, was also the first one who lived in the State of Rhode Island. Although he was the first settler there, he was not the founder of the colony.

2. There was a minister of the Gospel in Massachusetts, named Roger Williams. The Puritans there wanted every body to believe and act as they did. Williams would not, and so they told him he must leave that settlement, or they would put him in prison.

3. Williams went off among the tribe of Indians, called Narragansetts, and their great sachem, Canonicus, gave him some land at the head of Narraganset Bay. Williams, and a few men, formed a settlement there; and because of the goodness of God in preserving their lives in the wilderness, he called the place Providence. It is now the chief city in Rhode Island.

4. Williams gave permission to every one to worship God as he pleased. Many in Massachusetts, when they heard of this freedom, went to Providence, and the settlement grew quite fast. The great Indian sachem loved Williams, and matters went on smoothly.

5. In 1639, some people who came from Boston, and joined Williams, were presented by Miantonomoh, another Narragansett sachem, with the beautiful island of Aquiday, now called Rhode Island. They settled at the north end of it, and founded Portsmouth. Others, who came afterward, settled near the south end, and founded Newport. Each of these settlements formed a league, or covenant, for their government.

6. Roger Williams went to England to get a charter from the

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was the first white man in Rhode Island? 2. What can you tell of Roger Williams? 3. What can you tell about the settling of Providence? 4. What can you say of freedom there? 5. What can you tell of the settling of Rhode Island?

---

The Swedes on the Delaware.

king, in 1643. But the Parliament, or Legislature, of England, was then at war with the king, and had the power in their hands. So the next spring, Parliament gave him a charter, and all of the settlements were united into one colony, with the name of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations.

---

## SECTION VIII.

## ADVENTURERS IN DELAWARE, NEW JERSEY AND PENNSYLVANIA.

1. The settlements in New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware, were so connected that I must tell you about them all, in one story. We will begin with

## DELAWARE.

2. Some Dutch Adventurers came over in two ships, commanded by Peter Heyes, in 1631, and landed where the village of Lewiston, in Delaware, now is. The Indians murdered the whole of them.

3. At this time, the King of Sweden, in the north of Europe, had formed a plan for some of his people to establish a colony in America. That king was killed in battle, and he left his little daughter, who was only six years of age, to be queen. She was too little to do any thing, so some great men managed affairs until she became a woman.

4. Some people of Sweden joined, and formed the Swedish West India Company. The great men who managed affairs there gave them a charter, in the name of the dear little queen, and, in 1638, quite a number of Adventurers landed on the shores of the Delaware. They built a church and fort, bought a large tract of land of the Indians, and named the territory NEW SWEDEN.

QUESTIONS.—6. How was a charter for Rhode Island obtained? 2. Who first settled in Delaware? 3. What can you tell of the King of Sweden, and the little queen? 4. What about some Swedish Adventurers?

---

End of New Sweden.

Settlers in New Jersey.

5. Now the Dutch claimed all this land as a part of New Netherland, and told the Swedes they must leave it. The Swedes refused to go, and they and the Dutch quarreled about it for more than a dozen years. The Dutch governor on Manhattan finally sent soldiers there, to drive off the Swedes. The Swedes agreed to be governed by the Dutch, if they would let them stay, and so, in the year 1655, New Sweden was no more.

#### NEW JERSEY.

6. New Jersey was a part of New Netherland, and some Danish traders settled first at Bergen, and then on the Delaware river. The Dutch built a log fort just below Camden; and near there some families from Manhattan went in 1623.

7. Settlements were soon afterward made in other places in New Jersey. In 1630, a Dutchman purchased Staten Island, and all of the land around Jersey City, from the Indians. When, in 1664, the English took New Netherland away from the Dutch, the territory between the rivers Hudson and Delaware, was called New Jersey.

8. Soon after that, some families from Long Island settled at Elizabethtown. In 1665, Philip Carteret, brother of one of the owners of New Jersey, who had bought it from the Duke of York, came over with a charter, as governor of that territory. Then the people, for the first time, met together to make laws, and the colony of New Jersey was formed.

#### PENNSYLVANIA.

9. I shall tell you pretty soon how the people of England caused the head of their king to be cut off. It was at about that time that a man, named George Fox, began to teach the people that to please God, they must dress plain, wear their hats on in churches, never go to theaters or other places of amusement, and in a hundred ways to be plain and better than people

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell about a quarrel between the Dutch and the Swedes? 6. Who were the first settlers in New Jersey? 7. What else can you tell about settlers there? 8. How was the colony formed? 9. What was the origin of the Quakers?

---

William Penn and the Quakers.Settlement of Pennsylvania.

---

were in general. When he preached he shook or quaked all over; so the people called him and his friends, *Quakers*.

10. The son of one of England's best admirals, or great war-sailors, became a Quaker. His name was William Penn. The Quakers were despised in England, and he felt anxious to find a home for them in America. And he did so. Through him they were enabled to purchase the western half of New Jersey. Quite a large number of them came over in 1675, and settled there, and they named their landing-place Salem.

11. Soon after that, Penn received from King Charles the Second, a charter for a large territory west of the Delaware river, which he named Pennsylvania. That means *Penn's woody country*. It included the Swedish settlements. These people, as well as the Indians, became William Penn's warm friends, because he was a good and just man.

12. Many Quaker Adventurers, and others, came over and settled in Pennsylvania. In 1682 Penn obtained possession of the present State of Delaware; and, at about the same time, he sailed for America.

13. Penn arrived in November, and was warmly welcomed by the people. Already the inhabitants had been together and made some laws. He soon met them in a general assembly at Chester, and gave them a charter for a freer government than they had enjoyed before. Then the colony of Pennsylvania was established.

QUESTIONS.—10. What can you tell of a celebrated Quaker? 11. What can you say about the beginning of Pennsylvania? 12. What did Penn do in 1682? 13. How was Penn received in America, and what did he do?



WILLIAM PENN.

---

The English in the Carolinas.

---

## SECTION IX.

## ADVENTURERS IN THE CAROLINAS.

1. The beautiful country between Virginia and Georgia once belonged to the same persons, and it was not divided into North and South Carolina until the year 1729. I will first tell you about

## NORTH CAROLINA.

2. You remember what I told you on page 27, about the efforts of Walter Raleigh to make a settlement on Roanoke island. That island is near the coast of North Carolina, which Queen Elizabeth then named Virginia.

3. First a few people went from Captain Smith's settlement at Jamestown, and lived, some near the Roanoke river, and some nearer the sea. Almost fifty years afterward, quite a large number of Adventurers went from Virginia and settled at Edenton. Others soon followed, and, in 1663, William Drummond, a Presbyterian minister of the Gospel, was made their governor.

4. It was in the same year that King Charles the Second gave a charter to several Englishmen, for the whole country from Virginia to Florida. To please the king they called it Carolina. Two years afterward some people from the island of Barbadoes settled near Wilmington. This settlement also had a governor. These settlements, and others near, afterward formed the colony of North Carolina.

## SOUTH CAROLINA.

5. After a while, the owners of Carolina sent three ships full of Adventurers, to make settlements further south. After trying one or two places without being suited, they commenced a city near the sea, where the Ashley and Cooper rivers come together,

QUESTIONS.—1. 2. What have you to say about the Carolinas? 3. Who first settled in North Carolina? 4. What can you tell about a charter, and North Carolina becoming a colony? 5. What can you tell me about settlers in South Carolina?

---

Oglethorpe's benevolent plan for settling Georgia.

---

and, to please King Charles, they called it Charlestown. We call it Charleston.

6. Adventurers from Europe, and many Dutchmen from New York, soon joined them. They met in Charleston and made laws; and the same year when William Penn came to America, the South Carolina colony was fairly commenced. That was in 1682.

---

## SECTION X.

### ADVENTURERS IN GEORGIA.

1. More than a hundred years ago there were a great many very respectable people in the prisons of England, because they could not pay their debts. You will say they certainly could not work in jail and earn money to pay their debts. You are right. While they and their families suffered, no one was benefited.

2. A good man and fine soldier, named Oglethorpe, had thought a great deal about the folly and wickedness of putting people in prison for debt. He was a member of Parliament, which, you know, is a collection of great men who make laws in England, just as Congress does here. He spoke against putting these people in jail, and he got the king and Parliament to agree to a plan to help them.

3. His plan was to let all out of prison who would agree to go to America and settle in the wilderness south of the Savannah river. Oglethorpe even went so far as to offer to go with them, and be their governor. The plan pleased every body.

4. In the autumn of 1732, the very year in which Washington was born, Oglethorpe and one hundred and twenty Adventurers, who were chiefly from the debtors' prisons, sailed for

QUESTIONS.—6. Who joined them? and what did they do? 1. What can you say about debtors in prison? 2. Who took their part? and what did he do? 3. What were his plans? 4. What can you tell about the first Adventurers in Georgia?

---

Oglethorpe and To-mo-chi-chi.

---

America, went up the Savannah river, and landed where the city of Savannah now stands. There they had a long and pleasant talk with the Creek Indians.

5. The chief man among the Indians was old *To-mo-chi-chi*, who presented Oglethorpe with a buffalo skin, on which was the figure of an eagle. "Here," he said, "is a little present; I give you a buffalo's skin, adorned on the inside with the head and feathers of an eagle, which I desire you to accept, because the eagle is an emblem of speed, and the buffalo of strength. The English are swift as the bird and strong as the beast, since, like the former, they flew over vast seas to the uttermost parts of the earth; and, like the latter, they are so strong that nothing can withstand them. The feathers of an eagle are soft, and signify love; the buffalo's skin is warm, and signifies protection; therefore I hope the English will love and protect our little families." O, why did n't they do it? [Look at the picture on page 14.]

6. On that spot the Adventurers built rude cabins, and commenced the city of Savannah. Other Adventurers soon came, and, in 1733, the colony of Georgia was begun. It was so called in honor of King George of England.

QUESTIONS.—5. Can you tell me a story of the Indians and Oglethorpe? 6. What can you say of the colony of Georgia?

## CHAPTER IV.

### THE PLANTERS OR COLONISTS.

#### SECTION I.

---

The first *homes* in Virginia.

---

1. I HAVE explained to you the difference between a *settlement* and a *colony*—between *Adventurers* and *Planters*. And I have told you all about the first white people who came to settle in this country. Now I will tell you about the Colonists, or those who came here, planted grain, made laws, and staid as long as they lived. I will first tell you about the

#### PLANTERS IN VIRGINIA.

2. During the same year when the Pilgrims sailed from England, more than twelve hundred people went from that country to Virginia. They were mostly industrious persons, who wished to be planters; and among them were almost a hundred young women, who soon became the wives of settlers. Then, for the first time, there were *homes* in Virginia, in which fathers and mothers loved their little babes.

3. Jamestown grew to a large village, and settlements elsewhere were soon made, even as high up the river as Richmond. The people asked for, and obtained of the London Company, a *Constitution*, or written agreement which made their laws strong, and allowed them to have elections to choose men to make laws. But the company appointed a governor for the people.

4. Trouble soon came. Powhatan, the father of Pocahontas,

QUESTIONS.—1. What has been told you? 2. What can you tell about people going to Virginia? 3. What about the settlers in Virginia?

was dead, and his brother, who made Captain Smith a prisoner, and who hated the white people, ruled the nation. He perceived that the English would soon have all the lands of the Indians, and he determined to kill them before they became too strong for him.

5. At noon, on a beautiful day in April, in the year 1622, the Indians fell upon the white people, and in an hour they killed three hundred and fifty men, women, and children, who lived out of Jamestown. The people of seventy-two plantations out of eighty, were murdered or driven to Jamestown, in the course of a few days.

6. The English who remained alive took courage, attacked the Indians, and struck them with such terrible blows that the nation was almost destroyed. Sickness soon came upon the Planters, and, by the middle of the summer, not more than twenty-five hundred, of the four thousand who were there in the spring, remained alive in Virginia.

7. At about this time, King James determined to take Virginia under his care. The London Company heard of it, and, as they had lost money by attempting to settle it, they gave it up without any ado. Virginia became a royal province, and the king, instead of the company, appointed governors for the people. These were not always wise nor good.

8. Under a governor named Berkley, the planters of Virginia prospered for a long time. They raised more food than they needed, and the tobacco which they cultivated was sold for a great deal of money. Yet they were not free from trouble.

9. The people of England had got very tired of their king, who was a son of James Stuart, the mean monarch from Scotland. So they armed themselves; and led by a brave man named Oliver Cromwell, they first put King Charles in prison, and afterward cut off his head. Then Cromwell became ruler of England.

10. Most of the Virginia people were the friends of the king,

QUESTIONS.—4. What caused trouble? 5. What did the Indians do? 6. What did the English do? What happened to them? 7. What change did the king make? 8. What occurred under Governor Berkley? 9. What did the people in England do?

---

Conduct of Governor Berkeley.Bacon's rebellion.

---

and so was Governor Berkeley. But there were many who were Republicans, or opposed to the king. Between these parties there was much trouble; and finally, a young man named Bacon placed himself at the head of the Republicans, and defied the governor. This was after the dead king's son, Charles the Second, was made monarch of England.

11. The people had been severely taxed for some time, and the governor, who was a very proud man, and belonged to the Church of England, made Quakers and Baptists pay him a great deal of money, because they did not believe as he did, and would not worship God as he did. And there were now a great many idle people in the colony, who were proud because they had grand relations. They said the governor was right. The best men—the industrious planters and mechanics—said he was wrong, and these took sides with Bacon.

12. A sort of war soon commenced, and there was great trouble in Virginia, for awhile. Bacon having the most and the best people on his side, felt strong, and soon drove Governor Berkeley from Jamestown. Not long afterward, he was told that royal troops from England were coming up the river, to assist the governor and his party. Then he set fire to the village, and fled toward the York river. Every thing was consumed except the brick tower of the church, which is yet standing there. This was in 1676.

13. A fever soon caused the death of Bacon, and the war ceased. Some of his friends were hanged, many were imprisoned, and the governor ruled the people worse than before. And when Berkeley went away, other governors who came while any king named Stuart was monarch of England, were generally haughty and cruel.

14. Charles the Second died, and his brother, James, became

QUESTIONS.—10. What now happened in Virginia? 11. What can you say of the governor and some of the people? 12. What can you tell me about a war in Virginia? 13. What then happened?



CHURCH TOWER.

---

 King James driven from England.

 Planters in Massachusetts.
 

---

king. The people of England hated the very name of Stuart, and wished to get rid of him. So when his son-in-law, William of Orange, came from Holland with troops, the English people joined him, and soon drove the bad king away.

15. William was a better man, and his wife, Mary, was a good woman. So when King James the Second had fled to France, William and Mary became monarchs of England. Then in Virginia, and in all the colonies in America, there were better rulers, because the people had more power.

16. From that time, which was in the year 1689, the planters of Virginia prospered wonderfully. They increased rapidly, were no more troubled by Indians, and raised every thing in abundance. They had a great many negro slaves, who did all of the hardest work.

17. Slaves were first brought to Virginia, from Africa, by a Dutch vessel, in the year 1620. When the great French and Indian war commenced, of which I shall tell you presently, there were fifty thousand people in Virginia, and one half of them were negroes.

---

## SECTION II.

### PLANTERS IN MASSACHUSETTS.

1. "Welcome, Englishmen! welcome, Englishmen!" were the first words which the Pilgrim Fathers (of whom I have told you in verse 18, page 43) heard from the lips of an Indian. It was the voice of a chief who had learned a few English sentences from fishermen on the coast of Maine.

2. The Pilgrims had then been on the cold shores of Massachusetts Bay about a hundred days, and this was the first Indian who had ventured to approach them. He told them of Massa-

QUESTIONS.—14. What occurred in England? 15. What can you say of William and Mary? 16. What of the Virginian Planters? 17. What can you tell about negro slaves? 1, 2. What happened to the Pilgrims at Plymouth? What can you tell of Massasoit?

Massasoit and the Pilgrims.Massachusetts Bay Colony.

soit, a Wampanoag sachem who dwelt not far off; and the governor of the Pilgrims sent for him. Massasoit came in stately pride, with sixty warriors as a guard, and seated himself upon a neighboring hill. There he smoked the pipe of peace with Governor Carver, and made a treaty of friendship with the English, which remained unbroken for fifty years.

3. I have told you [verse 21, page 44] that Governor Carver and almost one half of his companions died before the flowers bloomed in the spring. For more than a year afterward, the remainder, and others who followed them from England, suffered dreadfully from cold and hunger. But they trusted in God, and endured all, until they could raise grain and build themselves comfortable houses. Then they were quite happy, except when troubled by unfriendly Indians, who sometimes threatened to destroy them.

4. At length the Pilgrim Planters and the London merchants who were in partnership with them, you remember [verse 15, page 42], disagreed. The Planters bought out the merchants, divided the soil equally among themselves, and prospered.

5. When the Puritans in England heard of the happiness of their friends in America, many more of them came over. A hundred of these came with John Endicott, in 1628, and settled at Salem, and two hundred more came the next year, and built cabins and planted at Charlestown.

6. In 1630, about three hundred more families came to Salem. They soon scattered into little settlements around the peninsula where Boston now stands. All of these settlements were united together, and were called the *Massachusetts Bay Colony*, with John Winthrop for their governor. Finally, the Plymouth settlement was joined to these, and from that time, that whole region where

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell of the settlers and their progress? 4. What did the Planters do? 5. What can you tell about other settlers? 6. What about settlers at Salem, and the action of the Plymouth people?



JOHN WINTHROP.

---

Founding of Boston.	Commencement of commerce.	Puritan intolerance.
---------------------	---------------------------	----------------------

---

the Pilgrims and the Puritans lived, was called *Massachusetts Bay*.

7. The water at Charlestown and other places was very unwholesome, and from this, and other causes, full two hundred of the emigrants who came over in 1630, were laid in the grave before the next winter. A curious old man lived alone on a peninsula, or land almost surrounded by water, near by. The Indians called the place Shawmut, which means "living fountains," because a spring of pure and sweet water bubbled out of the earth there.

8. The old man of Shawmut told Governor Winthrop about that spring, and he and many leading men built cottages near it, and lived there. Such was the beginning of the large city of Boston, now the largest town in all New England.

9. Winthrop was a wise man, and governed well. He made the Indians his friends, and invited the chiefs to his table. He had friendly letters from the Dutch on Manhattan; and pretty soon a ship came to Boston from Virginia, laden with corn and some tobacco. Then it was that American commerce, or trading by ships, was commenced.

10. The Puritans had made themselves a good home, where those who differed from them in religion could not hurt them. In their great desire to be alone, as it were, and not let those who differed from them, live among them, they became persecutors themselves—that is, they treated others who did not believe as they did, very badly. They even drove a minister of the Gospel, named Roger Williams, away into the wilderness among the Indians, because he would not do as they wished him to, and talked very plainly to them. I will tell you about Williams presently.

11. And now it was fifteen or sixteen years since the Pilgrims landed, in the snow, at Plymouth. Ship after ship had come with people from England; and in the year 1636, there were no less than twenty settlements in the Massachusetts Bay Colony.

QUESTIONS.—7. How did the settlers suffer? What then happened? 8. What led to the founding of Boston? 9. What can you tell of Winthrop? 10. How did the Puritans behave toward others? 11. What can you tell of the increase of settlers?

12. There were wise men and rich men, good men and some wicked men, among them. They did not all think alike, especially about religion; and the people, and ministers, and rulers, had warm disputes. A smart woman, named Anne Hutchinson, offended the ministers greatly, and the rulers first put her and her family into prison, and then drove them into the wilderness among the Indians. They wandered through the woods, almost to Manhattan island, and lived in a hut. There all but one of them were murdered by the Indians, who hated the white people.

13. Already a good man, named John Eliot, had preached to thousands of Indians around Massachusetts Bay, and many had become Christians. He visited them in their wigwams, and wrote the whole Bible for them in their own language, and taught them to read it. When he died, many years afterward, there were five thousand *praying Indians*, as the converts were called, in New England.

14. King Charles, who afterward lost his head, began to fear that the people of Massachusetts, who were increasing so rapidly, and were so independent because so far off, might soon defy him, and perhaps have a king of their own. So he did all in his power to prevent English people from going there. But he could not stop them. They went by hundreds, because they were badly used at home. But when the king was dead, and persecution ceased, very few came over the ocean to America, because they were happy in England.

15. In giving an account, on page 48, of Adventurers in Connecticut, I have told you about the war with the Pequod Indians. At the close of that war, the people of the settlements in New England thought it best to form a union, so as to act together for their safety in future. The best men, in the different settlements, met and agreed upon a union in 1643.

16. At this time there were twenty thousand people and fifty villages in New England. That union gave these white people great strength, and the bond lasted more than forty years, when

- QUESTIONS.—12. What happened among the Puritans? What to Mrs. Hutchinson? 13. What can you tell about Eliot's labors? 14. What can you tell about King Charles? 15. What about an union? 16. What can you tell about the New England Colonies?

First money coined in the United States.

The Quakers at Boston.

each colony had become strong enough to act for itself. The union was similar to that of our United States. Their Congress was a meeting of men, appointed by each colony, to attend to the general affairs of the whole.

17. Unlike the people of Virginia, nearly all of the inhabitants of Massachusetts Bay were against the king who lost his head, and favorable to Oliver Cromwell. While Cromwell ruled England, they had perfect freedom, and prospered wonderfully. They built ships and traded with the Spaniards in the West India islands, which were discovered by Columbus and other great sailors.

18. They also made shillings and sixpences of silver which



they obtained from the Spaniards. On one side of these coins, was the figure of a pine-tree, as you will see in the picture. This was always called "pine-tree money." It

**FIRST MONEY COINED IN THE UNITED STATES.** was the first money ever made in the United States. It was not half as beautiful as our dimes and quarters, but just as good for use.

19. I have already told you that the Puritans did not like to have people who differed from them come among them. I have also told you a little about the Quakers [page 52], when speaking of William Penn. Well, in the year 1656, two women, called Quakers, came to Boston. The Puritans had heard of such people, and they put these women in jail as soon as they arrived. Eight others came during the year, and they were all put on board of a ship and sent back to England.

20. Other Quakers came, and so annoyed the Puritans by their fault-finding with the ministers and the rulers, that they passed very harsh laws against them. Yet they continued to come, and the head men at Boston got very angry with them. They hanged some of them, whipped others naked through the streets,

**QUESTIONS.**—17. What can you tell about the New Englanders and Oliver Cromwell? 18. What about their money? 19. What can you tell about the Quakers? 20. How were the Quakers used in New England?

---

Persecution of the Quakers.      Defiance of the king.      The Wampanoag chief.

put several in prison, and drove others away, telling them that they should be hanged if they ever came back.

21. The Quakers did come back, and suffered much. Finally the Puritans ceased persecuting them, and the Quakers stopped preaching against the ministers and rulers. They went to teaching the Indians, and became good, quiet citizens. Persecution is always wrong. You may try to persuade people to believe and act as you do, but you should never attempt to force them to do so, because you may have the power.

22. When, in the year 1660, Charles the Second, son of the beheaded king, became monarch of England, the people of New England suffered some. The king had heard how they had liked Cromwell better than his father, and it made him angry with them. He dared not persecute them here, as his father and grandfather had done in England, but he annoyed them very much by injuring their trade with the West Indies and elsewhere. I will tell you how.

23. The king ordered the people of New England to pay him so much money, for every thing they received in certain ships. He sent men to collect the money in Boston and other places, but the New England merchants would not pay it, and the people said they were right. The king finally got tired of trying to collect the money, and he told his tax-gatherers that they might as well come home. This was the first grand act of defiance by the American people, toward the monarch of England, but not the last one, I can assure you.

24. And now, very serious trouble appeared. Old Massasoit, the Wampanoag sachem—the friend of the English—was dead. He had a brave son, named Metacomet. The white people called him King Philip. He saw the lands of his people where they hunted, and the streams wherein they fished, constantly passing into the possession of the English, and, in his cabin at Mount Hope, he sat and thought long about the future. He saw no hope for his nation, but in a war that should destroy all the

QUESTIONS.—21. What was done at last? 22. What can you tell about the second King Charles? 23. How did the king use the New Englanders? and how did they act? 24. What can you tell about a new trouble?

---

King Philip's war.

---

strangers. These strangers had wronged him, and he soon kindled a war. This is called

## K I N G P H I L I P ' S W A R .

25. On a Sabbath day, just as the people of a little village, called Swanzey, were returning from their churches, Philip and his warriors fell upon them. Several were killed, and some escaped to other settlements. The white people seized their arms, and surrounded a swamp, in Rhode Island, in which Philip had a sort of fort, and where he was gathering his warriors for other bloody deeds.



KING PHILIP.

26. The white people watched closely, but Philp and his men escaped. He hastened toward the Connecticut Valley, and aroused other Indians on the way. They spread death and destruction in every direction. In the course of a few weeks, several settlements were destroyed, the people were murdered, and their houses were burned. Philip was finally checked, and retreating to Rhode Island, he took refuge with the Narragansets.

27. Quite a large army of white people now fell upon the Narragansets, who, with Philip and his men, full three thousand in number, were in a swamp. In a little while, a thousand warriors were slain, many were made prisoners, and five hundred wigwams, with all the winter provision of the Indians, were burned.

28. Again Philip escaped, and he persuaded several tribes of the New England Indians to join him against the white people. These were soon upon the war-path ; and in the course of a few weeks, in the spring of 1676, they spread terror, desolation, and death over a space of three hundred miles. Many of the fright-

QUESTIONS.—25. How did King Philip's War commence? 26. What happened in the Connecticut Valley? 27. What can you tell of an attack on the Indians? 28. What was done in the spring of 1676?

The Indians conquered. The feelings of King Charles of England. Governor Andros.

ened people had palisaded their houses with sharpened sticks driven in the ground, but these did not always keep the Indians away.

29. The white people chastised the Indians severely, after this. During that year, they killed almost three thousand of them. King Philip was chased from one hiding-place to another, and finally he was shot in a swamp by an Indian friendly to the English. Then his head was cut off, and carried in triumph upon a pole, into the village of New Plymouth. So perished the last of the princes of the Wampanoags, and with him the strength of the New England Indians.

30. King Charles the Second would have been glad, I have no doubt, if the Indians had killed all of the white people in Massachusetts, for he feared and hated them. They were increasing rapidly in numbers and wealth, and at the close of the war, the territories of the present New Hampshire and Maine were added to that of Massachusetts, and made the colony still stronger.

31. At length, the king determined to take all power in New England into his own hands, and not let the people govern themselves. He had already taken steps to do so, when God took his life away, and his brother James became king. James was worse than Charles. He hated a people who despised kings, like himself, and he gladly sent a proud man, named Andros, to become governor of all the Planters in New England.

32. Andros was as bad as his master, and the people hated and despised him because he was cruel and wicked. The Planters of Massachusetts were about to send him off to England in a ship, as they did the Quaker women, and then tell the king to help himself, if he could, when the people in that country drove James away to France, and William and Mary became their monarchs.

33. The King of France took sides with James, and the French

QUESTIONS.—29. What was finally done to Philip and the Indians? 30. What can you say of King Charles and the people of New England? 31. What can you tell of Kings Charles and James? 32. What can you tell about Governor Andros?



PALISADED HOUSES.

and English went to war with each other. The French and English people in America quarreled and fought, too. These troubles continued for several years, and the event is called

#### KING WILLIAM'S WAR.

34. The white people of New England suffered dreadfully during King William's war, because the Frenchmen in Canada persuaded the Indians to join them in murdering the English. Several villages in New England were burnt, and many white people were killed. Women and little children were not spared.

35. On a cold night in February, 1690, the French and Indians came softly in the snow, and burned the village of Schenec'ada, near Albany, in New York. The people were fast asleep, and were awakened by the yells of the Indians and the burning of their houses. As they ran into the streets, they were killed by their enemies. The boldness of the French and Indians, in coming so near the thick settlements, caused the people of New York and New England to join together and make war upon Canada—where their enemies came from.

36. They made great preparations. They sent strong ships, with armed men, up the St. Lawrence to attack Quebec, and hundreds of soldiers by land. But they did not succeed. The troops did not get to Canada, and the people in the ships, who landed at Quebec, found the city too strong for them, with its soldiers, and cannons, and heavy walls around it.

37. This war finally ended in 1697. In the mean while, King William had united the colonies of Plymouth, Massachusetts, Maine, and the region beyond, called Nova Scotia, or New Scotland, made them into a royal province, and called it Massachusetts Bay Colony. Sir William Phipps, who commanded the ships sent to Quebec, was appointed governor. But the people did not like the new arrangement very well, and plainly told the king's officers so.

QUESTIONS.—33. What followed the expulsion of King James from England? 34. What happened in New England? 35. What can you tell about the destruction of Schenectada? and what was the effect? 36. What can you tell about an expedition to Canada? 37. What new arrangement was made by the king?

38. A great many people, in those days, were foolish enough to believe in witches. One day, two young girls in Salem commenced twitching and acting very strangely. An old Indian woman was accused of bewitching them. Pretty soon others began to act just as strangely, and in almost every house somebody was "bewitched." Homely old women were first accused of being the witches, but at last, all sorts of people were suspected.

39. Even the governor's wife was called a witch; and a very good minister of the Gospel was accused, and was afterward hanged. A great many innocent people were imprisoned, and otherwise punished; and during the six months that this frightful delusion prevailed, twenty persons were hanged. At last the rulers and people came to their senses, and the supposed witches disappeared. They all felt ashamed; and every body, from that time to this, laughed about the *Salem witchcraft*.

40. This trouble had passed away, and the long war had ended, and people began to hope for happier days. But they were disappointed. The French and Indians continued to plunder and murder the English who lived in the wilderness, and even villages were attacked and destroyed. The French wanted to get possession of the whole country, and the Indians loved war and plunder, and so they kept busy together in annoying the New Englanders.

41. England became offended at something France had done. They quarreled and went to war. Queen Mary was dead, and King William having been killed by a fall from his horse, Mary's sister, Anne, became Queen of England. On that account, this war, which was commenced in 1702, was called

#### QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.

42. As before, the French and English in America went to war too, and again the white people in New England suffered

QUESTIONS.—38. What can you tell about witches? 39. What about the sufferings of the people? 40. What new troubles came? 41. What changes took place in England? 42. What then happened in America?

---

Troubles with the French and Indians. The captive maiden. Walker's expedition.

---

dreadfully from the cruelty of the French and Indians. Fortunately for the people of New York, the Five Nations, of whom I have told you [verse 6, page 12], were honorable, and having agreed not to fight for or against either party, did as they had promised.

43. The New England Indians had made similar promises to the English, but the French wickedly persuaded them to break their word. Then there was great trouble all along the frontier, and every one was made afraid. Many people were murdered by the French and their dusky allies, villages were burned, and a large number of inhabitants were carried off by the Indians, as prisoners.

44. There was a little girl, named Williams, who was carried away from Deerfield by the Indians. She was the daughter of a minister, and was kept among them until she grew to be a young woman. She came to love them very much, for they were kind to her, and she married a Mohawk chief, a brave man among the Five Nations.

45. Some of the New England Colonies joined together in raising an army of soldiers and a fleet of ships, with which to chastise the French in Nova Scotia. In the course of three or four years they made the French people there very glad to behave themselves properly, and then, to prevent more trouble, they took the country away from France and gave it to England.

46. In the year 1711, a great English war-sailor, named Walker, came to Boston with many ships and soldiers. These were joined by New England people, and they all sailed for the St. Lawrence river, to attack Quebec. Eight of Walker's ships were wrecked, and a thousand of his soldiers were drowned, and he went back to Boston very sorrowful.

47. The French, the English, and the Indians, had now become tired of war, and in 1713 they all agreed to be friends. The chiefs of the eastern Indians went to Boston, and promised

QUESTIONS.—43. What can you tell about troubles in New England? 44. What can you tell about a little captive girl? 45. What was done against the French in the East? 46. What can you tell about Walker's expedition? 47. What more can you tell of the English, French, and Indians?

---

King George's war.Capture of Louisburg.

---

not to do the English any more harm. They kept their word, and, for thirty years, there was no more war in America, between the French, the English, and the Indians.

48. In the year 1744, England and France quarreled again, and went to war, and, for the third time, the French and English in America thought it proper to quarrel too, and commenced fighting. At that time, Queen Anne's son, George, was monarch of England, and this contest was called

## KING GEORGE'S WAR.

49. Eastward of Nova Scotia is quite a large island, called Cape Breton. Upon that island the French had a town named Louisburg, and there they built a very strong fort, having heavy walls and many great guns. This gave the French very great power in that quarter, and the people of New England and New York joined together to take the fort away from them.

50. The English in America hated the French, because they had made the Indians act so cruelly. On a warm day in April, in the year 1745, a large number of soldiers sailed from Boston, for Cape Breton. On the way they were joined by several large English war-ships, from the West Indies; and toward the middle of May they all landed not far from Louisburg.

51. The French people, seeing four thousand Englishmen coming with ships and cannon, were greatly frightened. After talking the matter over among themselves, they came to the conclusion that they could not drive their enemies away, and therefore there was no use in fighting. So they surrendered—that is, they sent word to the English commanders to come and take their fort, city, and ships, if they would spare their lives and treat them well. These things were done, and the English went back to Boston, well pleased.

52. The King of France was much mortified by the capture of Louisburg; and the next year he sent many heavy ships to

QUESTIONS.—48. What can you tell of a new quarrel with France? 49. What can you tell about Louisburg? 50. What was done in the spring of 1745? 51. What did the French at Louisburg do?

---

The Dutch on Manhattan.

Their kindness to all.

---

get the fort back again. Dreadful storms beat upon the ships, and many of them went to the bottom of the ocean. The remainder returned to France. From that time until now, the English have owned the island of Cape Breton, and every thing upon it, except private property.

53. France and England remained quiet a few years, when another quarrel broke out, and caused one of the most distressing wars then ever known in America. It lasted seven years, and is called the FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR. I shall tell you about that in another chapter.

---

### SECTION III.

#### 'PLANTERS IN NEW YORK.'

1. I have told you [page 39] how the Dutch made settlements on Manhattan island, and commenced building a city at the lower end of it. They called that city New Amsterdam. When Planters and their families came, a governor came also. His name was Minuit. He bought of the Indians all of the land on which the city of New York now stands, for twenty-four dollars. I will soon tell you how New Amsterdam came to be called New York.

2. The governor built a strong inclosure and called it Fort Amsterdam. But he did something better than this, to keep the Indians from troubling the Dutch—he made them his friends, and traded honestly with them. He was also friendly with the people of New England, and did every thing to make New Amsterdam a pleasant home for all who came there. So commenced the colony.

3. In order to settle the country rapidly, the Dutch West

QUESTIONS.—52. What can you tell of an expedition from France? 53. What happened afterward? 1. What can you tell about the Dutch on Manhattan? 2. What did their governor do?

---

A weak and a wicked governor.

The poor Indians.

---

India Company, of which I have told you [verse 5, page 39] agreed to give so much land to men who should lead or send a certain number of emigrants to settle upon it. Those who received lands in this way, were called *Patroons*, or patrons. The family of one of these Patroons, named Van Rensselaer, yet own large tracts of such land in the neighborhood of Albany.

4. When a new governor, named Van Twiller, came to rule at New Amsterdam, it was found that he could be easily persuaded. Bad men, no doubt, advised him to do wrong. He quarreled with the settlers in Connecticut, but I do not blame him much for that. He did not treat the Indians very well, and in that he was wrong. Yet he was a much better man than Kieft the next governor.

5. Kieft loved money, power, and liquor. He loved to quarrel with every body. He made the English in Connecticut, and the Swedes on the Delaware, his enemies. He quarreled with the Indians all around him, and with his Dutch neighbors in New Amsterdam. His conduct soon made the Indians hate him, and his own people despise him.

6. Under some pretense, he made war first upon some Indians in New Jersey, and then upon others beyond the Harlem river. The people of New Amsterdam did not like these things, because their fur-trade with the Indians was lessened, and they plainly told the governor so. Kieft was somewhat afraid of the people, so he asked the leading men of the city to get together, and talk over these affairs with him. This was the first Representative Assembly in New Amsterdam.

7. Some of the people finally agreeing with the governor, he resolved to make further war upon the poor Indians. At this time a large number of River Indians, pursued by the Mohawks, had taken shelter at Hoboken, opposite New Amsterdam. Instead of being the friend of these poor people in their distress, Kieft took this opportunity to destroy them.

8. At the middle of a cold winter's night, Kieft's soldiers

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell about *Patroons*? 4. What can you tell about Van Twiller? 5. What kind of a man was Kieft? 6. How did he offend the people? and what was done? 7. What did the governor do?

crossed the Hudson, attacked the sleeping Indians, and before daylight, almost a hundred helpless men, women, and children were either killed outright, or were pushed off the high banks into the freezing river. It was a cruel act, and the Indians all over the country were so angry, that they killed every white man they saw, and burned white people's houses everywhere.

9. This terrible Indian war finally ended. The white people were the strongest, and peace came. Kieft's conduct was so bad that the company told him to come home, and they would put a better man in his place. With a great deal of property obtained by wrong-doing, he sailed for Europe. The ship was wrecked, the property was lost, and Kieft was drowned. The wicked never go unpunished.

10. Peter Stuyvesant, a brave soldier, became governor of New Netherland, in 1647. His kindness and honesty made the Indians his friends, and his bravery and justice made him respected by both the English on the east and the Swedes on the west. He ruled the people strongly, but wisely and faithfully.

11. The Dutch at length became jealous of the Swedes, who were rapidly increasing; and as they were clearly in New Netherland, Stuyvesant was directed to bring them under his power. He had built a fort which the Swedes had attacked and taken possession of. This was sufficient cause for war, and with six hundred men he went to the Delaware, and soon made the Swedes acknowledge his power. He was their governor after that.

12. The Swedes being conquered, the Indians reconciled, and the English in Connecticut satisfied, Stuyvesant concluded all trouble was at an end. But there was some at his very door. You remember Kieft once asked the leading men to get together, [verse 6, page 73], and consult with him. Stuyvesant never did so; and finally the people who wished to be consulted, appointed a few good men to assemble and propose certain laws.

13. Stuyvesant scolded, but the people were firm. They re-

QUESTIONS.—8. What wicked thing was done to the Indians? 9. What happened to Kieft? 10. What can you tell of Stuyvesant? 11. What can you tell about the Dutch and Swedes? 12. How was Stuyvesant mistaken?

---

New Amsterdam taken by the English, and named New York.

---

fused to be taxed without being consulted, and when he threatened to punish them, they plainly told him that they would willingly be under English rule, for the sake of enjoying English liberty. This was an unpleasant hint.

14. Soon after that English ships and soldiers came, took possession of the fort, and compelled Stuyvesant to give up the whole country. That was a sad day for the proud governor, but



CITY OF NEW YORK IN 1664.

he could not help himself. Then he wished that he had listened to the people, and made them love Dutch rule better. This was in 1664.

15. King Charles had given New Netherland to his brother James, the Duke of York. So its name was changed to that of New York, in honor of the Duke. The city was called so too, and many things were changed. An English governor ruled; and the people soon found that they were no better off. Taxes were greater, and privileges were less.

16. A few years after this, England and Holland went to war. Suddenly many Dutch ships appeared in New York Bay, and the English were compelled to give up the city and whole country to them. When peace was made, these were given back again, and from that time, until it became an independent State, New York belonged to the English.

17. The wicked Andros, who was afterward sent to rule all New England, you remember [verse 31, page 67], became governor of New York in 1674. The people, who hated him, grew stronger and stronger every day; and, finally, when he left in 1683, they procured from the Duke a writing, which was called a *Charter of Liberties*. Then a Representative Assembly was

QUESTIONS.—13. What more can you tell of Stuyvesant and the people? 14. What soon happened? 15. What changes took place in New Amsterdam? 16. What other changes soon occurred? 17. What can you tell about the people and government in New York?

---

*Leisler, the martyr.**Political parties in New York.**Newspapers.*

---

regularly chosen by the people, and popular government was established.

18. When Duke James became King James, on the death of Charles, he refused to let the people have an Assembly, and he began to oppress them in various ways. They had resolved to defy him, and were on the point of open rebellion, when the king was driven from England, and William and Mary became monarchs, as you remember. [See page 60.]

19. There was now no royal governor in New York, and the people chose Jacob Leisler, a talented merchant and leader of their military companies, to rule them. This gave offense to many leading men; and, finally, when a governor was sent, Leisler was accused of treason, or doing injury to the government, because he had done as the people wished him to do.

20. The enemies of Leisler tried to persuade the governor to hang him and his son-in-law, Milborne, who was his aid. The governor refused. But one day, while he was drunk, after dining with one of their enemies, the governor gave his written consent to have them hanged, and they were both dead before he became sober. The people were very indignant, and Leisler and Milborne have ever been regarded as martyrs by those who think the people have a right to choose their own rulers.

21. From that time there were two political parties, violently opposed to each other, in New York. One took sides with the governor, whoever he might be at the time, and the other with the people. Those who favored the governor were called Aristocrats, and those who favored the people were called Democrats.

22. Each party had a newspaper, and through this, as well as in public meetings and the Colonial Assembly, they quarreled continually. The Democratic editor published something offensive to the governor, in 1734, and he was put in prison. The best lawyer in America was employed in his favor, and he was finally set at liberty, by the decision of those who tried him.

QUESTIONS.—18. What can you tell about the king and people? 19. What did the people do? 20. What did the enemies of Leisler accomplish? 21. What can you tell of parties in New York? 22. What can you tell about a newspaper difficulty?

23. This decision made great rejoicing among the people, and they gave the lawyer, Mr. Hamilton of Philadelphia, a gold box. This was considered a great victory, because it established the liberty of the PRESS in New York.

24. From that time until the commencement of the French and Indian war, the history of New York is made up chiefly of the stories of party quarrels, which you care nothing about, and which I take no pleasure in relating. So here, for the present, I will end the history of the State of New York, and pass on to that of another.

## SECTION IV.

### PLANTERS IN MARYLAND.

1. The people at St. Mary's, where, you remember [verse 6, page 46], the first settlement in Maryland was made, formed a more convenient government, after they had been there six years, by choosing a few men to make laws for the whole of them. This is called a Representative Government, because a few represent the many. Our Government is such a one.

2. The people of that colony, as well as those of others, had some troubles with the Indians, but they did not last long. Then they quarreled and fought among themselves. A man named Clayborne had traded with the Indians, and made settlements in Maryland, before Calvert and his people came, so he claimed to have a better right to the country than Lord Baltimore. Many of the people thought so, too, and they and those who thought otherwise, fought about it. Clayborne's party got the worst of it.

3. The Maryland Legislature did a good thing in 1649. They made a law which allowed the people to worship God as they pleased. The Quakers and Churchmen, who were persecuted in

QUESTIONS.—23. What was the effect of the decision? 24. What can you say of the history of New York from that time? 1. What can you tell of the government of Maryland? 2. What can you tell of troubles there? 3. What did the Legislature do?

---

Troubles in Maryland.Religious difficulties.

---

New England, and the Puritans who were badly used in Virginia, went to Maryland to live, and the colony grew very fast.

4. The troubles in England at the time when King Charles was beheaded, made trouble in Maryland, also; for many of the people took sides with the king, and many others with Cromwell, as they did in Virginia [page 58], you remember. These parties quarreled a great deal, and they were all unhappy for many years.

5. Finally the people of Maryland quarreled about religion. The first settlers were Roman Catholics. When the law that allowed every body to worship God as he pleased, became known, as I have told you, a great many Protestants, as those who were not Roman Catholics were called, came there to live.

6. In 1654 there were more Protestants than Roman Catholics in Maryland, and they ungenerously changed the laws, and deprived Roman Catholics of their rights. This led to hot quarrels, and finally to a war that lasted two years. Such a war of a people among themselves, is called Civil War.

7. Lord Baltimore, who owned Maryland by a charter from the king, was a Roman Catholic, and the Protestant Legislature went so far as to take all power and right away from him, and give them to the people. These things made great unhappiness in Maryland; but finally, in 1660, when the dead king's son, Charles, became monarch, he gave every thing back to Lord Baltimore; and for almost thirty years afterward, the colony was quite peaceable, and prospered.

8. All worshiped God as they pleased, in Maryland, and every thing was going well, when King James of England was driven away to France [page 60], as I have told you. That king was a Roman Catholic. The governor of Maryland was also a Roman Catholic, and he did not like, at first, to own the Protestant William and Mary as his sovereigns.

9. This hesitation made a busy-body, named Coode, tell the Protestants that the governor was going to call in the surrounding Indians to murder them all. They armed themselves, and,

QUESTIONS.—4. What was the effect of troubles in England? 5. What can you tell of a religious quarrel? 6. What did the Protestants do? 7. What can you tell about Lord Baltimore? 8. What can you say of the king and the Maryland governor?

---

Rights of Lord Baltimore restored.The Connecticut people.

---

led by Coode, they took possession of all the public writings, and the government, and declared they would have nothing more to do with the owner of Maryland.

10. The Protestants ruled the colony, by representatives, until 1691, when King William took matters into his own hands, declared Maryland to be a royal province, and appointed a governor himself. Then the Church of England was made the religion for all in Maryland, and the Roman Catholics, who settled the country, were cruelly deprived of their rights.

11. In 1716, the rights of Lord Baltimore were restored. He was then dead, and his oldest son was a little baby. The guardians of the little boy took good care of matters for him till he grew to be a man. He and his family owned Maryland, and appointed the governors, until 1776, from which time the people have chosen their own rulers, for Maryland then became one of our States.

---

## SECTION V.

PLANTERS IN CONNECTICUT.

1. I have told you about the settlers or adventurers in the Connecticut Valley, and at New Haven, and how they became planters. Those of New Haven were disposed to be merchants, too, and to send ships to different parts of the world to trade. But after losing several of their ships, they concluded it would be better to be nothing else but planters. They were a good people, and made the Bible their only Law-Book.

2. Stuyvesant, the soldier-governor of New Netherland, went to Hartford, on the Connecticut river, in the year 1650, and in friendly talk, settled all of the disputes about lands with the planters there. Two years afterward, when England and Holland

Questions.—9. What did a busy-body do? 10. What change took place in Maryland? 11. What can you tell of Lord Baltimore's family? 1. What did the New Haven people do? 2. What can you tell of the Dutch and English?

went to war, the New England people foolishly believed that the Dutch in New Netherland wished to fight them, and that they had employed the Indians to kill all the white people eastward of the Connecticut river. So they prepared to fight the Dutch, but they soon found that there was no truth in the foolish story.

3. When Charles the Second became monarch, the Connecticut Valley people asked him for a charter. He refused. Then the Connecticut governor, whose father had been a great friend of the dead king, went to England to see Charles about it. The king's father had given the governor's father a ring. This the governor gave to Charles, and he felt so happy that he granted a charter to the Connecticut river people, which included Rhode Island and the New Haven colony, and extended west to the Pacific Ocean.

4. Rhode Island refused to be thus joined to Connecticut, but the New Haven colony agreed to the union, and so, in 1665, the real colony of Connecticut was formed, and remained so until it became an independent State, more than a hundred years afterward. Rhode Island and Connecticut quarreled about the boundary line between them, for sixty years. It was a very long quarrel.

5. In the year 1695, Andros, the tyrant, then Governor of New York, claimed the right to rule the people of Connecticut, and went there to assert it. They soon sent him away; and for a dozen years every thing went on pleasantly and prosperously.

6. Andros, as I have told you [verse 31, page 67], came over in 1686, as Governor of all New England, and tried to take away the charter from the colonies. Late in autumn he went to Hartford, to get the Connecticut charter which King Charles had given them. The people treated him politely. They knew his errand, and were prepared.

7. Andros went into the Assembly or Legislature, and told them to bring the charter to him. The law-makers talked about it a long time, until it became dark and candles were lighted.

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell about a charter for Connecticut? 4. What can you tell about Rhode Island and Connecticut? 5. What can you tell of Andros? 6. What did he afterward try to do?

---

Andros and the Connecticut charter.

The charter preserved.

Then the charter, nicely packed in a long mahogany box, was brought and laid upon the table. Just as Andros stepped forward to take it, the lights were all put out.



ANDROS AND THE CHARTER OF CONNECTICUT.

8. When the candles were again lighted, the charter could not be found. A plan had been laid to keep it from Andros. In the darkness, Captain Wadsworth snatched it up, ran some distance into a field, and hid it in the hollow trunk of an old oak-tree. There it remained until Andros was driven away from New England, when it was brought out.

QUESTIONS.—7. What can you tell about Andros and the Connecticut charter? 8. How was Andros outwitted?

---

The charter oak.

Governor Fletcher and Captain Wadsworth.



THE CHARTER OAK.

9. That venerable and venerated tree stood in the city of Hartford, one hundred and sixty-nine years afterward. On a very stormy night in August, 1856, it was blown down, and now it has passed away forever. It was known by the name of *The Charter Oak*.

10. Again the people of Connecticut showed their bravery and love of freedom.

Governor Fletcher, of New York, claimed the right to rule in Connecticut. The people there refused to obey him. He went to Hartford, called out the militia, and commenced reading a paper which gave him the right. That same Captain Wadsworth who hid the charter, now commanded the militia, and he ordered the drums to be beaten. "Silence," said the governor, angrily. The drummers stopped, and he began to read. "Play," said Wadsworth to the drummers. "Silence!" shouted the governor. Wadsworth then stepped in front of him and said, "Sir, if they are again interrupted, I'll make the sun shine through you in a moment!" The frightened governor put the paper in his pocket, and went back to New York, very much out of patience I can assure you.

11. From that time until the French and Indian war, when there were one hundred thousand people in Connecticut, the Planters there shared in all the labors and expenses of the conflicts that occurred. They were also very prosperous.

---

## S E C T I O N VI.

### P L A N T E R S I N R H O D E I S L A N D .

1. I have told you how Roger Williams was driven from Massachusetts, and became the founder of Rhode Island. Those who

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you tell about the Charter Oak? 10. Tell the story of Governor Fletcher and the Connecticut people.

---

The Rhode Island charter.

Newport.

Sale of New Jersey.

---

drove him away soon became jealous of him, and afraid of his free opinions; and it was claimed that "Williams's Narraganset Plantations," as they called Rhode Island, belonged to Massachusetts.

2. The charter that Williams obtained in 1643, was pronounced, in 1652, to be good by the Legislature of England, called the Long Parliament, and Massachusetts then gave up its claim. But there was a dispute about the boundary line between Rhode Island and Massachusetts, for almost a hundred years. It was settled in 1741.

3. Roger Williams was chosen the first governor of the Providence and Rhode Island Plantations, in 1653, and the colony prospered greatly, for every one was free. Ten years afterward Charles the Second gave them another charter, which Andros took away. It was afterward restored, and under it the people lived one hundred and fifty-seven years.

4. Newport soon became a thriving town; and when, in 1732, Dr. Franklin's brother commenced printing there, it contained five thousand inhabitants. There John Smibert, the first man who painted good portraits in America, lived for some time. The colony always bore its share in wars until the French and Indian contest, of which I shall soon tell you.




---

## SECTION VII.

PLANTERS IN NEW JERSEY.

1. New Jersey was a part of New Netherland, and was included in the gift [page 75] which Charles the Second made to his brother James, the Duke of York. The same year when the English took possession of New Netherland, the Dutch sold New Jersey to two noblemen, named Berkeley and Carteret.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell of Roger Williams and others? 2. What can you tell of the claim of Massachusetts to Rhode Island? 3. What can you tell of the progress of Rhode Island? 4. What can you tell about Newport? 1. What can you tell about New Jersey?

---

LIBERALITY OF THE OWNERS OF NEW JERSEY. TROUBLE WITH THE SETTLERS. THE QUAKERS.

---

2. These noblemen, anxious to have the country settled, offered the land without rent or taxes, for five years. This liberality, and the fine climate, caused many planters to go there, and farms were seen in all directions. The people first met to make laws, in 1668.

3. Every thing went on smoothly during the five years; but then, when the owners asked for a rent of only a half-penny an acre, the people grumbled, and declared they would not pay it. They quarreled with the owners for two years, and then drove away the governor they had appointed, and chose one themselves.

4. The owners were about to compel the people to pay the rents, when the Dutch, as I have told you [verse 16, page 75] took possession of the whole country again. When it went back to the English, new regulations were made, and the western half of New Jersey was bought by a Quaker, as a place for his friends in England and elsewhere, to settle and have peace. It afterward went into the hands of William Penn and others, and the province was divided into EAST and WEST JERSEY.

5. More than four hundred Quakers came from England and settled in West Jersey, in 1677. They lived peaceably together, as Quakers always do, and prospered. Andros, the tyrant, tried to rule them, but they would have nothing to do with him; and, in 1681, the first Legislature of West Jersey met at Salem, and made some excellent laws.

6. After awhile the Quakers bought East Jersey also; and Thomas Barclay, who wrote a large book about his people, was made governor. Every thing was going on well, when the Duke of York became King James, and the charters were taken away from both the Jerseys.

7. Now all was confusion, and remained so for several years after King James was driven away to France. Finally, in 1702, the Jerseys were united and made into a royal province, under Lord Cornbury, a bad man who was the governor of New York. Thirty-six years afterward, New Jersey was made independent of

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you tell of a liberal offer? 3. How did the people behave? 4. What changes took place? 5. What can you tell of Quaker settlers in West Jersey? 6. What of them in East Jersey? 7. What changes again took place?

---

The character of William Penn.Founding of Philadelphia.

---

New York, and remained so. Lewis Morris was its first governor. It became an independent State in 1776.

---

## SECTION VIII.

### PLANTERS IN PENNSYLVANIA.

1. I have told you that William Penn joined the territory of Delaware to Pennsylvania in 1682. Then the colony of Pennsylvania fairly commenced, and a great many Planters came.

2. Penn was a just man, and treated the Indians so well that they loved him, and called him "Good Father Penn." He bought their lands instead of taking them without leave; and he told them that he and his people wished to live with them as brothers.

"Thou'l find," said the Quaker, "in me and mine,  
But friends and brothers to thee and to thine;  
Who abuse no power, and admit no line  
'Twixt the red man and the white.

"And bright was the spot where the Quaker came  
To leave his hat, his drab and his name,  
That will sweetly sound from the trump of Fame,  
Till its final blast shall die."

3. In the autumn of 1682, Penn laid out the city of Philadelphia. That word means "City of Brotherly Love." Within a year, almost one hundred houses were built, and every day the Indians came with wild fowls and the flesh of deer, to present to Good Father Penn. Never was a State blest with a better beginning; and, as long as the Quakers ruled Pennsylvania, peace and prosperity prevailed there.

Questions.—1. What was done in 1682? 2. What can you tell about William Penn? 3. What can you tell of Penn and Philadelphia?

---

*Penn's kindness to the Planters.**His visit to America.**His death.*

---

4. In 1683, Penn called the representatives of the people together, and gave them a "Charter of Liberties." It was so very just, that all were made happy. It was agreed that all might worship God as they pleased; and to the people he gave the privilege of choosing their own rulers. So they were a perfectly free people, as we now are.

5. Penn returned to England, and soon afterward King James was driven away to France. He and Penn had always been good friends, and because the Quaker would not speak harshly about the king, he was suspected of being an enemy to the new monarch. He was put in jail, and Pennsylvania was taken from him, and made a royal province under the control of the Governor of New York.

6. Not long afterward Penn was let out of prison, for it was found that he was a friend of William and Mary. Pennsylvania was given back to him, and he came over to America in 1699, to look after his affairs.

7. The people asked Penn for a more liberal charter, and he granted it in 1701. The people of Delaware now asked him to let them have a Legislature of their own, and he granted that too. From that time, until the War for Independence in 1776, Pennsylvania and Delaware were under one governor, but had distinct Legislatures.

8. Soon after making these arrangements, William Penn returned to England. He never came to America again, for his health failed, and he died in 1718, leaving Pennsylvania to his three sons. These and their heirs owned the province until 1776, when it was purchased by the people for more than half a million of dollars.

QUESTIONS.—4. What did Penn do for the people? 5. What happened to Penn in England? 6. What was the result? 7. What more can you say of Penn and his family? 8. What can you tell of Pennsylvania and Delaware?

## SECTION IX.

## PLANTERS IN THE CAROLINAS.

1. The owners of the Carolinas, knowing that they possessed a very beautiful country, and that a great many Planters were going there, thought it would be fine to make a government for it, like that of England, with all sorts of grand people, except a king. So they employed two or three learned men to write a *Constitution* for the purpose.

2. At first, the Planters in the Carolinas laughed at the idea of having fine gentlemen who would do nothing, with their fine houses, and horses, and carriages, and servants, in the woods of America! And when they found that the owners were in earnest, the strong and industrious Planters told them plainly that they would have no such government.

3. There was a long quarrel about it, and finally the owners were compelled to give up their grand scheme. Then they tried to get money from the Planters, by making them pay so much for every thing that came in ships, and in other ways. The people got very angry at last, drove the governor and other officers away, and for two years they managed their own affairs.

4. When these quarrels were settled, a very mean man, named Seth Sothel, who loved money more than any thing else, came to govern the Carolinas. He cheated every body. After being there six years, he left, just as the people were going to put him on a ship, and send him to England. Then some better governors came, but none made the people so happy and prosperous as the good Quaker governor, John Archdale.

5. These troubles happened in the northern part of the Carolinas. At the same time, the Planters in the southern part were prospering, and were rapidly increasing. They formed a Legis-

QUESTIONS.—1. What did the owners of the Carolinas wish to do? 2. What did the Planters think of their scheme? 3. What can you tell about the owners and the Planters? 4. What can you tell of Sothel and others? 5. What was done in South Carolina?

---

The people of South Carolina.      Troubles with the governor.      John Archdale.

---

lature in 1674, but there was such a mixture of people, that they did not agree very well. There were English, Scotch, Irish, and Dutch, Protestants and Roman Catholics, and they disputed continually.

6. But when, in 1680, the Indians attacked the settlements, they all united for defense, and forgot their quarrels, while they conquered the Indians. That same year, the city of Charleston was laid out, and it soon became a flourishing village. The Planters continually increased, and many went up the Santee and Edisto rivers, where they cultivated fine farms.

7. Many Huguenots came from France to settle there, and have peace. The English disliked the French, and would not allow them to take any part in making laws, or in other management of affairs. The French people were treated so for about ten years, when the English, finding them better than they expected, began to love and respect them, and then gave them all the privileges of citizens.

8. Like their more northern friends, the Planters in the south refused to have any thing to do with the grand movement prepared by the owners. They quarreled with the governor, drove him away, and took public matters into their own hands. This happened in the year 1690.

9. In the midst of this trouble, Seth Sothel came there, and the people foolishly allowed him to be their governor. He robbed and cheated them, as he did the people of the northern colony, and at length they drove him away. After that they would have no other governor from the owners, till the good Quaker, Archdale, came to rule both Carolinas, in 1695.

10. The Planters had peace and prosperity while Archdale remained, which was not a great while. From the close of his time, the histories of the two Carolinas are quite distinct, although the provinces were not separated until 1729.

QUESTIONS.—6. What can you tell about the Indians and the Planters? 7. How were French people treated there? 8, 9. What can you tell about the government of South Carolina? 10. What can you say of Archdale?

## NORTH CAROLINA.

11. At the beginning of the year 1700, Planters were cultivating lands in North Carolina from the sea-shore to the Yadkin river. The Indians were dying rapidly. Many had gone further into the forests, and the people of different countries were coming to occupy their lands.

12. For several years all was peaceful, and the Planters no longer dreaded the Indians, when a terrible calamity befell them. The Tuscarora Indians were yet quite strong, and they persuaded the broken Indian families in that region to join them in killing all the white people, in 1711. In one night they murdered one hundred and thirty Germans; and for three days they destroyed the people, and plundered and burned their buildings, in all directions.

13. The people of South Carolina came to help their neighbors. The Indians were driven back, but the war continued more than a year. Finally, in the spring of 1713, eight hundred Tuscaroras were made prisoners, and the rest fled north and joined their brethren, the Five Nations, in New York. Then was formed the union of the SIX NATIONS, of which I have told you on page 12.

## SOUTH CAROLINA.

14. The Spaniards at St. Augustine, in Florida, became troublesome, and in 1702 the governor of South Carolina prepared twelve hundred soldiers to go there and attack them. Half of these were white people, and half of them were friendly Indians.

15. Some of these soldiers went by land, and some by water. They did not succeed in driving the Spaniards away from St. Augustine, as they expected to, and they went home disappointed. This affair cost the Planters of South Carolina many thousand dollars. They had very little gold and silver, so they made paper

QUESTIONS.—11. What was the condition of North Carolina in 1700? 12. What can you tell of an Indian massacre? 13. What about an Indian war? and how did it end? 14. What can you tell about the Spaniards in Florida? 15. What did the Carolinians do?

money for the first time—such as we use—to pay the expenses with.

16. The next year, the governor and some soldiers marched against the Indians in Georgia and Florida, who were friends of the Spaniards. They took several hundred of them prisoners, and desolated their country.

17. Soon after this, another governor of South Carolina tried to make all the people worship God according to the forms of the English Church. Those who would not, were persecuted. This made a great many people uneasy, and disputes continued a long while. The Churchmen had to give up, at last, and the people were allowed to think and act about religion as they pleased.

18. A greater trouble appeared in 1706. The angry Spaniards sent many soldiers, in several French and Spanish ships, to attack Charleston and take possession of the country. The ships came into Charleston harbor, and eight hundred soldiers landed. The South Carolinians were ready to meet them. They soon drove them all to their ships, and took one of the French vessels.

19. A still darker trouble appeared a few years later. Several Indian tribes joined for the purpose of killing all of the white people in South Carolina, in the spring of 1715. In this great band there were full six thousand warriors. They commenced so secretly that one hundred people had been murdered in the back settlements before the news reached Charleston.

20. The governor of South Carolina acted promptly. With twelve hundred men, he marched against the Indians. After several hard fights, he drove them far back into the wilderness, and killed a great many. The Indians were dreadfully frightened; and believing the white people to be such mighty warriors that they could not be conquered, they let them alone after that.

21. The people of South Carolina were now heartily tired of proud and money-loving governors. The owners, or *Proprietaries*, had never spent a dollar in helping them build up a State, or for

QUESTIONS.—16. What was done to the Indians? 17. What other trouble occurred in South Carolina? 18. What trouble did the Carolinians have in 1706? 19. What further trouble a few years afterward? 20. What can you tell about an Indian war?

Division of the Carolinas.

Georgia.

Oglethorpe and the Spaniards.

paying the expenses of Indian wars. They had made the Planters pay their rents punctually, and in every way acted ungenerously toward them. At last the Planters asked the king to take the country into his own hands. He did so, and South Carolina became a royal province in 1720.

22. The people of North Carolina were just as tired of their governors, too, and talked of taking matters into their own hands, when the king bought the territory in 1729, and it became a royal province. The two Carolinas were thus separated. But the people were not much better off under the royal governors, and with these they were continually disputing, until they became independent in 1776.

+

## SECTION X.

### THE PLANTERS IN GEORGIA.

1. The town of Savannah, laid out by Oglethorpe, was upon a high bluff, beautifully shaded with palmetto and other evergreen trees. It grew rapidly; and within eight years, full twenty-five hundred people had come to Georgia, from Europe. Quite a large number of these were German and Swiss families. There were also many lazy people among the immigrants; and, as the climate was very hot in summer, very little work was done in the fields. So the colony did not prosper.

2. Oglethorpe was wide awake. He knew the Spaniards at St. Augustine would soon become jealous of his colony. Being in England in 1736, he persuaded three hundred tall and stout Scotch Highland soldiers to come over with him. With these he thought he might defy the Spaniards.

3. A great soldier of the cross, as gospel ministers are some-

**QUESTIONS.**—21. What brought about a change in South Carolina? and how? 22. What was done in both Carolinas? 1. What can you tell about the Georgia colony? 2. What can you tell about Oglethorpe?

---

Preparations to fight the Spaniards.Story about a French deserter.

---

times called, came with him at the same time, to preach to the Indians and persuade the planters to be better people. It was John Wesley, the first great Methodist. But the people cared very little for what he said. Then the great preacher, George Whitefield, came, and tried to do them good in many ways, but he labored almost in vain. Oglethorpe felt discouraged, for he well knew that without industry and goodness, his colony would not thrive.

4. As Oglethorpe expected, the Spaniards soon began to show their jealousy. So he built some forts in the lower part of Georgia. This made the Spaniards very angry, and they told Oglethorpe that he and all the English must leave the country below the Savannah river, or they would drive them out.

5. Oglethorpe was not alarmed, but he went to England and got six hundred more good soldiers. Just then war broke out between England and Spain, and Oglethorpe concluded not to wait for the Spaniards to come against him, but he marched against them, with his own troops, and some South Carolinians and Indians. He had almost reached St. Augustine, when sickness and want of food compelled him to go back to Savannah.

6. Two or three years afterward, the Spaniards, with many vessels and soldiers, came to invade Georgia, and drive the Planters away. Oglethorpe was prepared for them, and in the lower part of Georgia, and upon an island near there, the English and Spanish soldiers came very near having hard battles.

7. One day, when Oglethorpe was preparing to go secretly around and attack the Spaniards, a Frenchman in his army ran away and told the enemy all about it. Oglethorpe laid a plan to punish the runaway and trick the Spaniards.

8. He wrote a letter to the Frenchman, telling him that a British fleet was near St. Augustine, and also spoke about his doing all he could for the English, in the Spanish camp. Then he gave a young Spaniard, who was his prisoner, some money and told him to carry the letter to the Frenchman. Instead of

QUESTIONS.—3. What about good men in Georgia? 4. What offended the Spaniards? and what was done? 5. What did Oglethorpe do? 6. What did the Spaniards do? 7. What did a Frenchman do? 8. What story can you tell about the Frenchman?

---

The Spaniards deceived.

Prosperity of Georgia.

The strife for power.

---

that he carried it to the Spanish commander. That was just what Oglethorpe wanted. The Frenchman was arrested as a spy, and the Spaniards were dreadfully alarmed at the idea of a British fleet being near St Augustine.

9. Just then some Carolina vessels appeared. The Spaniards thought they were the English fleet. They resolved to attack one of Oglethorpe's forts, and then go to St. Augustine as quick as possible. On the march Oglethorpe attacked them, and so many Spaniards were killed that the spot is yet known as Bloody Marsh. So Georgia was saved.

10. Oglethorpe went to England in 1743, and never returned to America. That year a sort of government was formed in Georgia, but the colony did not prosper. African slaves were not allowed there as in the Carolinas and Virginia. The Planters did not own the land they cultivated, and they were not allowed to traffic with the Indians nor trade, in ships, with the people of the West India islands. On these accounts, there was very little cause for the people to be industrious and improve the lands.

11. Finally a happy change came. The king took possession of Georgia in 1752, and from that time until our War for Independence, it remained a royal province. The people might now own their lands, traffic with the Indians, trade in ships, and manage to employ negroes to till the ground. From that time Georgia began to thrive wonderfully, and it has always been one of the most enterprising of the southern States.



## SECTION XI.

### THE STRIFE FOR POWER ; OR, THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

1. I have already told you of the wars in which the French and Indians fought the English in America. These were called, you remember, King William's war, Queen Anne's war, and

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you tell about a battle between the English and Spaniards? 10. What change took place? Why did the colony not prosper? 11. What happy change occurred? 1. What were the wars between the French and English in America called?

---

The French and English in the Ohio country.

---

King George's war. The quarrels that brought on these wars were about matters in Europe.

2. The war I am now going to tell you about, began in a quarrel about the boundary line between the English and French in the Ohio country. At that time there were about one hundred thousand French people in America, and ten times as many people in the English colonies.

3. The French were great traffickers with the Indians, all over the country west of the Alleghany mountains, from Lake Erie to New Orleans, and they built a great many forts in the wilderness. This made the English jealous.

4. After awhile, some English people, by permission of King George of England, went into the Ohio country, and commenced marking out land upon which to settle. The French told them that they had no business there, for the country belonged to the King of France. So they quarreled about it, when, in fact, the country belonged to the Indians. One smart old Indian, who heard the quarrel, said, "You English claim all one side of the river, and you French all the other side; where does the Indians' land lay?" They could not answer.

5. The French had soldiers there, and, with these, they caught some of the English and put them in prison, and drove the remainder away. Dinwiddie, the Governor of Virginia, whose rule extended over a part of that country, now thought it high time for him to take up the quarrel. So he sent a young man, named George Washington, to ask the French commander what he meant by such conduct.

6. Young Washington, who afterward became the greatest man in America, was prudent and brave, and could be relied on. In cold weather, he traveled through the woods and over rivers, with ice and snow everywhere, full four hundred miles, before he found the French commander. He had a long and polite talk with him, and carried a letter back to Governor Dinwiddie, which was not very satisfactory.

QUESTIONS.—2. How did the French and Indian war commence? 3. What can you tell of the French? 4. What can you tell of events in the Ohio country? 5. What did the French and the Virginia governor do? 6. What can you tell about Washington?

---

Expedition against the French.      Battle at Fort Necessity.      Congress at Albany.

7. The French captain gave Dinwiddie to understand, that he had a right to be in the Ohio country with his soldiers, and that he should stay as long as he pleased. Dinwiddie then mustered the Virginia soldiers, and sent them to drive the French away. He made young Washington a major, and gave him the command of the first body of troops that went against the French.

8. While these things were taking place, the English commenced building a fort where the city of Pittsburg now is. The French drove them away, finished the fort, and called it Du Quesne, which was the name of the Governor of Canada. This is pronounced Du Kane.

9. Washington marched rapidly forward; but hearing that a large number of French soldiers were coming to meet him, he went back a little way, and built a fort, which he named Necessity. At that time, Colonel Fry, who commanded all the troops, died, and Washington became the chief leader.

10. The French attacked Fort Necessity; and after fighting ten hours, Washington and his soldiers were compelled to give up, and became prisoners. The next day the French commander let them all go, and they returned to Virginia.

11. In the summer of 1754, a number of men, appointed by several colonies for the purpose, met at Albany, in New York, to consider how they should proceed to keep the French back. They first made a covenant of peace with the strong Six Nations, and then they agreed upon a plan made by Dr. Franklin, by which the colonies should all be united as one, as our States now are. Many of the people, as well as the English Government, did not like it, and the colonies were not united until twenty years afterward.

12. Excited by the French, the Indians now commenced murdering white families on the frontiers of New England and other places, and the English saw no better way than to make a regular war upon the French.

QUESTIONS.—7. What did Governor Dinwiddie do? and why? 8. What happened where Pittsburg is? 9. What can you tell of Washington's expedition? 10. What about a battle? 11. What was done at Albany in 1754? 12. What happened in New England?

Troops from Great Britain.

War in Acadie.

Braddock's defeat and death.

13. The English Government agreed to help the colonists; and in February, 1755, Edward Braddock, a great Irish soldier, came to America, with troops, and took the chief command. He met the governors of several colonies at Alexandria, in Virginia, and they arranged a plan of operations, or 

## T H E C A M P A I G N O F 1 7 5 5 .

14. Three separate armies were to be mustered. One was to march against the French at Fort Du Quesne; another against French forts near each end of Lake Ontario; and a third against strong forts on Lake Champlain.

15. Already a fourth expedition had been arranged to drive the French out of Acadie, or Nova Scotia. Three thousand men sailed from Boston for the purpose. They took the French forts, and then cruelly drove the poor and innocent inhabitants to the woods, destroyed all their crops, and carried many away in ships. In one month a happy people were made the most wretched of any on the earth. How dreadful is war!

16. With two thousand men, Braddock marched from the Potomac river, toward Fort Du Quesne, having Washington for his aid. Braddock was a proud man, and would not listen to the advice of young Washington, concerning the best way to be prepared for the Indians. He marched proudly on, when, just at noon, on a hot day in July, a shower of bullets and arrows came from the woods around him.

17. A dreadful battle now commenced. There were a thousand dusky warriors concealed in the woods. For three long hours the fight continued; and every officer who rode a horse, except Washington, was killed or wounded. The dead bodies of the white people covered the ground; and finally Braddock was shot, after having several horses killed under him.

18. Washington now took command. God had preserved him for greater deeds in after years. An Indian warrior declared that

QUESTIONS.—13. What was done in 1755? 14. What was the plan of the campaign for 1755? 15. What occurred in the East? 16. What can you tell about Braddock? 17. What can you tell of a battle?

The preservation of Washington.Burial of Braddock.

he had fifteen good shots at him, but could not hit him. He tried no more, for he knew the Good Spirit protected him. Under Washington's directions, the troops retreated, and the Indians did not follow.



BURIAL OF BRADDOCK.

19. Braddock was carried from the field and soon died. He was buried in the woods by torch-light; and on the margin of the grave, with sorrowing officers around him, Washington read the solemn funeral service of the Church of England. Then all the troops went back to their homes.

QUESTIONS.—18. What can you tell of Washington? 19. What about the burial of Braddock?

---

Operations in Northern New York. Battle at Lake George. Fort William Henry.

20. Governor Shirley, of Massachusetts, commanded the troops that were to march against the French forts on Lake Ontario. He did not succeed in reaching them. He went to Oswego, but storms on the lake, and sickness in his camp, prevented his going further. So he commenced building a fort there, and, leaving a few troops to take care of it, he marched back to Albany with the remainder.

21. The troops intended for Lake Champlain were commanded by an Indian agent among the Mohawks, named William Johnson. About six thousand of them were collected at Fort Edward, under General Lyman; and when General Johnson arrived there, he led nearly all of them to the head of Lake George, and formed a camp, in September.

22. Indian scouts now informed Johnson that Dieskau, the French commander, was coming with many Canadians and Indians to attack him. He sent Colonel Williams, with a party of white soldiers and Mohawk Indians, to meet him. They were assailed and beaten by Dieskau, who then marched rapidly forward to attack Johnson's camp.

23. Johnson had two cannons, upon a pile of logs and brush, which the French and Indians knew nothing about. When they came rushing forward, these were fired. Many of the enemy were killed, and the remainder, dreadfully frightened, fled to the woods, and Johnson won the battle. Dieskau was badly wounded, and died some time afterward.

24. General Johnson was told that the French were very strong at Crown Point and Ticonderoga, on Lake Champlain, and concluded not to go there. He built a fort where his camp was, and called it William Henry. He then left some troops there and at Fort Edward, and with the rest of his army marched back to Albany in October. Thus ended the campaign of 1755.

25. There was now a regular war between the English and French in America. As there appeared no prospect of the quar-

QUESTIONS.—20. What can you tell about Shirley? 21. What can you tell about William Johnson? 22. What can you tell of a battle near Lake George? 23. What can you tell of another battle? 24. What did General Johnson then do? 25. What now occurred?

---

Campaign of 1776.

Lord Loudon.

Capture of Oswego.

---

rel being settled soon, preparations were made on both sides of the Atlantic, for

## THE CAMPAIGN OF 1756.



ABERCROMBIE.

26. Lord Loudoun, a very indolent man, was appointed chief commander of all the troops, but he did not come to America until late in the summer. General Abercrombie, a great soldier, came in his place, in June, with a large body of troops from England and Ireland. England and France had then declared war against each other, and the battles were nearly all to be fought in America.

27. The plan of this campaign was similar to that of the last. Fort Du Quesne, and the forts on Lakes Ontario and Champlain were to be attacked. When Abercrombie arrived, there were seven thousand troops at Albany, ready to march against the French on Lake Champlain. On account of some foolish difficulties they did not start until August, and then that great French soldier, General Montcalm, was well prepared to fight.

28. Early in August, Montcalm, with five thousand Frenchmen, Canadians, and Indians, went up Lake Ontario, and after a pretty hard battle, took the forts at Oswego away from the English. They also made fourteen hundred of them prisoners, and took from them many cannons, and vessels in the harbor.

29. The loss of Oswego was very disheartening. Loudoun was alarmed, and he ordered all the other expeditions to be abandoned. Forts William Henry and Edward were made stronger. A large number of soldiers were placed in block-houses and other small fortifications along the frontiers of Virginia and Pennsylvania, under the command of Washington; and similar strong places were made in the Carolinas.

QUESTIONS.—26. What can you tell of Loudoun and Abercrombie? 27. What can you tell of the plan of the campaign of 1756? 28. What occurred at Oswego? 29. What was then done by Loudoun? and what movements took place?

---

Indians in Western Pennsylvania.Expedition against Louisburg.

---

30. During the spring and summer of 1756, the Indians killed or carried away almost a thousand white people on the western frontier of Pennsylvania and Virginia. Hearing that a greater portion of these Indians were at Kittanning, their chief town, Colonel Armstrong and three hundred soldiers attacked them there one night early in September. Their chiefs were killed and their town was destroyed. After that they were quiet. So ended the campaign of 1756.

31. It was a pity that the slow, and weak-minded Lord Loudoun had the chief command of the troops, for some greater soldiers were ready to do much more than he. The French had got possession of Louisburg, and Loudoun resolved to make the capture of that fortress the chief business of

## THE CAMPAIGN OF 1757.

32. Most of the people were disappointed, for they wished to have the French driven from Lake Champlain and the Ohio country.

33. Loudoun arrived at Halifax at the close of June, where he met a large number of war-ships and five thousand troops, from England. He was about to start for Louisburg, when he was told that the French had many more men and ships there, than he had with him. So he thought it more prudent to leave them alone. He returned to New York in August, when he was mortified and alarmed by the news that Montcalm had been doing a great deal of mischief in the north.

34. Toward the close of July, Montcalm and a large number of French, Canadians, and Indians, left Ticonderoga, and attacked Fort William Henry at the head of Lake George. The garrison, as troops in a fort are called, was commanded by Colonel Monro, a very brave officer. The chief commander, General Webb, was at Fort Edward, and when Montcalm approached, Monro sent to him for help.

QUESTIONS.—30. What can you tell of Indians in western Pennsylvania? 31. What can you say about Loudoun? 32. How did the people feel? 33. What more can you say of Loudoun? 34. What can you tell of an attack upon Fort William Henry?

---

Capture of Fort William Henry.

Indian Massacre.

Pitt prime minister.

---

35. For six days the brave Monroe refused to give up the fort, every day expecting help from Webb. It was not sent, and at last he could hold out no longer, and surrendered. Montcalm admired Monro's bravery, and promised that he and his troops should be used well, and conducted to Fort Edward.

36. Montcalm's intentions were honorable, and he endeavored to fulfill his promises. But his blood-thirsty Indians, two thousand in number, could not be controlled. Soon after the English left the fort, these savages fell upon them, killed a great many, plundered their baggage, and chased them almost to Fort Edward. Then Fort William Henry and all belonging to it were destroyed, and Montcalm marched back to Ticonderoga.

37. This disastrous event ended the campaign of 1757, and with it the command of Lord Loudoun in America. Thus far the English had lost by the war, chiefly for the want of a good chief commander. The Colonists knew this all the while, and felt irritated. If they could have chosen their own generals, and carried on the war themselves, no doubt they would have ended it the first year, by driving the French back to Canada.

38. Yet, whenever money or men were called for, the Colonists furnished them cheerfully, even while feeling the injustice of their own rulers, and of the English government. By these misfortunes the pride of the English people was touched, and at last, to their great joy, their wishes were gratified by having William Pitt, the smartest man in England, made the prime minister, or chief manager of public affairs. He commenced, with great energy, preparations for

#### THE CAMPAIGN OF 1758.

39. Pitt appointed General Abercrombie in the place of Lord Loudoun. A large number of armed ships were prepared, and placed under the command of a great war-sailor, Admiral Boscawen; and in America every body was determined to do something great this year.

QUESTIONS.—35. What can you tell of Colonel Monro? 36. What dreadful event occurred? 37. What can you say about the war, so far? 38. How did the Colonists feel? and what gratified them? 39. What preparations were made for the campaign of 1758?

## Campaign of 1758.

## Operations on Lake George and Champlain.

40. It was agreed to attack Louisburg, Ticonderoga, and Fort Du Quesne. Late in May, Boscawen, with forty ships, left Halifax. Two great soldiers, Generals Amherst and Wolfe, with twelve thousand men, went with him, and early in June they landed near Louisburg. For almost fifty days there was fighting there. Then the French gave way, and five thousand of them became prisoners to the English.

41. While these things were going on in the east, General Abercrombie and young Lord Howe were leading almost twenty thousand men toward northern New York, to attack Ticonderoga. They went down Lake George, in flat-boats, on a beautiful Sabbath in July, and the next morning commenced marching through the woods and swamps toward Ticonderoga. Pretty soon they were attacked by the French, and Lord Howe was killed.

42. Every body mourned when they heard of the death of young Howe. He was so good that they all loved him. Captain Schuyler took his body to Albany and put it in a vault. Many years afterward his coffin was opened, when behold ! his beautiful brown hair had grown very long.

43. Abercrombie heard that more troops were coming to help the French, so he pushed on through the woods, without his cannons, to attack Ticonderoga. But he found it too strong for him, and after a hard fight for four hours, and losing almost two thousand men, he marched back to Lake George, and finally to Albany, leaving the French still in possession of Ticonderoga.

44. From Lake George, Abercrombie sent Colonel Bradstreet and three thousand soldiers to attack the French at Frontenac, where Kingston, in Canada, now is. They captured the fort in August, and then marching through the woods to the Mohawk river, where the village of Rome now stands, they assisted in building fort Stanwix.

45. The army that marched against Fort Du Quesne was commanded by General Forbes. Colonel Washington was with him.

QUESTIONS.—40. What can you tell of the expedition against Louisburg? 41. What occurred in northern New York? 42. What can you tell of Lord Howe? 43. What did Abercrombie do? 44. What can you tell about Bradstreet?

---

Capture of Fort Du Quesne.

## Preparations to invade Canada.

Forbes, like Loudoun, was a very slow man, and it was late in the Autumn before he got over the Alleghany mountains.

46. Washington then marched rapidly forward. The French at Du Quesne heard of his approach, and being greatly alarmed, they set fire to the fort and escaped down the Ohio river in boats. The name of Fort Du Quesne was then changed to Fort Pitt, in honor of England's prime minister. There the city of Pittsburgh now stands.

47. From what I have told you, you perceive that the English *did* do great things this year. They took from the French three of their strongest forts, Louisburg, Frontenac, and Du Quesne, and frightened the Indians so, that they agreed not to fight the English any more. The American Planters now began to feel safer, though the war was not ended.

48. The final struggle was now at hand. Pleased with what had been done in 1758, Pitt determined to do more in

---

### THE CAMPAIGN OF 1759.

49. He resolved to send good officers and troops enough to conquer all Canada, and thus put an end to French power in America. For this purpose he appointed General Amherst to the command of all the troops in America and those to be sent from England.

50. In the spring of 1759, Amherst found twenty-four thousand troops in America, ready to invade Canada. Ships and soldiers were also sent from England. It was arranged to send one division by the way of the St. Lawrence river, to attack Quebec; another was to drive the French from Lake Champlain; and a third was to attack them at Fort Niagara.

51. When, on a hot day in July, Amherst appeared before



LORD AMHERST.

QUESTIONS.—45. What can you say about Forbes? 46. What can you tell of the march against Fort Du Quesne? 47. What had the English done? 48, 49. What did Pitt resolve to do? 50. What can you tell about the plan of the campaign for 1759?

The French driven from Lake Champlain. Taking of Fort Niagara. Wolfe.

Ticonderoga, with eleven thousand men, the French, who had just heard that an English army, under Wolfe, was at Quebec,



RUINS OF TICONDEROGA.

fled in haste to their fort at Crown Point. Amherst pursued them. They were dreadfully frightened, took to their boats, and fled over the Lake toward Canada. So the French were

driven from Lake Champlain, and never returned. Fort Ticonderoga was partly destroyed.

52. Generals Prideaux (pronounced Pre-do) and Johnson sailed from Oswego in July, to attack Fort Niagara, at the mouth of the Niagara river. Prideaux was killed by the bursting of a gun at the first assault, and Johnson took command. For three weeks the French held out, when some of their countrymen and many southern Indians came to help them. But the English conquered them all, and took possession of the fort.

53. Wolfe, the greatest soldier of them all, was now near Quebec, with eight thousand troops, and a large number of battleships under the command of Admirals Holmes and Saunders. Quebec was a strong, walled town, a part of it three hundred feet above the river St. Lawrence. It was a hard city to fight against.

54. That great French soldier of whom I have told you [page 100], General Montcalm, was the commander, and his army was in a strong camp along the St. Law-



GENERAL WOLFE.

QUESTIONS.—51. What can you tell of Amherst on Lake Champlain? 52. What occurred at Niagara? 53. What can you tell of events at Quebec? 54. What can you tell of the movements of Wolfe and Montcalm?

---

Battle on the shore of the St. Lawrence.      Attack on Quebec.      Wolfe wounded.

---

rence, from Quebec to the Montmorenci river. Wolfe first landed on the island of Orleans, below the city, to attack this French camp. He also took possession of Point Levi, opposite, where General Monckton was stationed.

55. Early in July, Wolfe formed a camp below the Montmorenci, and a number of English troops crossed from Point Levi, and attacked the French just above that stream. On the beach, in the midst of a terrible thunder-storm and the roar of the waters, a hard battle was fought, and full five hundred of the English perished.

56. Week after week now passed away. Wolfe was waiting, in vain, for Amherst to come and help him. At length, a fever laid the great soldier prostrate in his tent. At the beginning of September he called his wisest officers to his bedside, and consulted upon what it was best to do. They soon decided.

57. Back of Quebec, and as high above the river, is a level spot, called the Plains of Abraham. It was resolved to scale these heights, and attack the city on its weakest side. Feeble as he was, the brave Wolfe determined to lead the troops. On the evening of the 12th of September, they went secretly in their boats, and at midnight they were on shore at a ravine that led up to the Plains of Abraham.

58. Montcalm had no suspicion of what the English were doing, and you may imagine his surprise when, early in the morning, he saw their scarlet dresses and bright bayonets flashing in the sun, upon the Plains of Abraham. He immediately marched his whole army across the St. Charles river, and attacked the English.

59. A hard battle commenced at ten o'clock. Wolfe led the English, as the two armies came together, notwithstanding he was already wounded twice. Soon a musket-ball pierced his breast, and he fell. He was conveyed to the rear, fainting from

QUESTIONS.—55. What can you tell of a battle? 56. What can you tell of Wolfe and his plans? 57. What was now done? and how can you describe the places? 58. What can you tell of Montcalm? 59. What can you tell of the battle, and death of Wolfe?

---

Death of Wolfe and Montcalm.

Capture of Quebec.

Montreal taken.

---

MONUMENT TO WOLFE  
AND MONTCALM.

loss of blood. Just then he heard a shout, "They run! they run!" "Who run?" asked Wolfe. "The French," was the reply. "Then I die contented," he said, and expired.

60. Montcalm was killed at about the same time; and now, in the city of Quebec, one tall monument stands in memory of both of them. Five days after the battle, Quebec was given over to the English. Fighting then ended for the season, but Canada was not yet conquered. That event was accomplished in

#### THE CAMPAIGN OF 1760.

61. In the spring of 1760 the French made efforts to get Quebec back again. But they failed; and their army was compelled to leave that neighborhood and flee to Montreal. That was now the last strong place held by the French in Canada.

62. General Amherst made great preparations during the summer, and, early in September, three English armies appeared before the doomed city of Montreal. Amherst came down the St. Lawrence with ten thousand troops and a thousand Indian warriors, and was met the same day by General Murray, from Quebec, with four thousand men. The next day Colonel Haviland arrived from Crown Point, with three thousand troops.

63. The French commander now saw that all was lost. He gave up the city and all Canada, on the 8th of September, and General Gage, of whom I shall tell you more, was made governor. So the French and Indian war ended in America, but all was not settled, until a treaty, or bargain, was made at Paris, in 1763.

64. Frenchmen kept the Indians at the South very restless. In the spring of 1760, some Cherokees having been injured by some white people, the whole nation commenced a bloody war-

QUESTIONS.—60. What more can you say about Wolfe and Montcalm? What was accomplished? 61. What can you tell about the French? 62. What occurred at Montreal? 63. What further occurred at Montreal?

---

Pontiac's war.

Death of Pontiac.

Close of French and Indian war.

---

fare upon the frontiers of Virginia and the Carolinas. This continued for more than a year. Finally the Cherokee villages were destroyed, and many of the warriors were killed by a small English army, and their power was broken forever.

65. Soon after this, Pontiac, an Ottawa chief, induced several of the north-western tribes to join in endeavors to drive the white people from their country. Pontiac was one of the greatest Indians ever known. Like King Philip, he saw the lands of his people passing into the hands of the English, and in despair, he kindled the war. It was terrible for a time, but the Indians were finally conquered.

66. Pontiac fled to the country of the Illinois tribe, where he was basely murdered by an Indian, who did it for a barrel of rum given him by an Englishman. The great city of St. Louis now covers his burial place. This was nearly the last sad act in the

**FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.**

67. Here, my Young Friend, the story of the American people as English colonists draws to a close. I am now to tell you how they became tired of being ruled by a king and legislature beyond the ocean, and resolving to rule themselves, struggled many years and gained the victory. A new and more interesting scene will now open. Listen attentively.

QUESTIONS.—64. What can you tell of an Indian war? 65. What can you tell about Pontiac? 66. What can you tell of Pontiac's death? 67. What am I to tell you about next?

# CHAPTER V.

## SECTION I.

### THE STRIFE FOR FREEDOM; OR THE REVOLUTION.

---

The Great Patriots.

The War for Independence.

---

1. THE story of the great Patriots, or those who loved their country better than their own ease and comfort, than silver and gold, houses and lands, and willingly suffered every thing for their country's good, is one of great interest to you, my Young Friend.

2. When you shall have heard the whole story of the Revolution, I am sure you will not only love those great Patriots who suffered and worked so much, but you will wish to do all you can for the good of your country. I will first tell you about

#### THE PRELIMINARY EVENTS,

or what happened to bring about the war, called the Revolution, or the War for Independence.

3. You have heard how, for a long time, the English people in America had troubles with their governors; and that they did not like the Kings of England any too well. But each settlement or colony was too small and weak to defy the king, so they submitted to wrong.

4. Then you have heard how they joined against the French and Indians; and how, at last, being helped some by soldiers and sailors from England, they took the whole northern country

QUESTIONS.—1. What are Patriots? 2. What is first to be related? 3. What has been said of the Americans? 4. What more have you heard about them?

## Strength of the Planters.

## George the Third.

## Taxation.

away from the French, made the Indians afraid, and became really one great nation of Planters.

5. Well, these things made the Planters know how strong they were when united, and they felt a desire to become one people. They talked about this a great deal, and finally they resolved that if the king and governors did not use them better than they had done, they would defy them all, and govern themselves.

6. When the French and Indian War closed they hoped for better times, for a good young man had just become King of England. This was George the Third, who lived almost sixty years a king. If he could have had his own way, he would have been kind and indulgent to the Americans, but bad, and often ignorant men advised him, and things went wrong.

7. The war just ended had cost England a great deal, and all the money in the king's treasury was spent. He asked his ministers or advisers how he should get more. "Tax the Americans," they said; "they are rich, and are willing to give you as much money as you want. Make them pay so much upon every thing they receive in ships. It is but little, and they will not mind it."

8. The young king did so, and sent men, called Commissioners of Customs, to collect the money. The people grumbled about it, and disliked the commissioners; and a great patriot, named James Otis, of Massachusetts, spoke his mind plainly, and advised the people not to pay a penny. So the king did not get much money in this way.

9. The king and his advisers now tried another way to get money from the Americans. They made a law that every piece of paper on which bargains or agreements of any kind were written, should have fastened to it a little piece of blue paper, on which were stamped certain words. It was decreed that all bargains or agreements, written upon paper without this, should be good for nothing.

QUESTIONS.—5. What did the Planters know and do? 6. What can you say of a young king? 7. What can you tell about taxing the Americans? 8. What did the king do? and how did the Americans feel and act? 9. How did the king and his friends try to get money from the Americans?

## The Stamp Act.

## Patrick Henry and his eloquence.

47



A STAMP.

10. These bits of blue paper were called *stamps*, and were furnished by the king and his advisers, only, for which they charged certain prices. It was thought that, in this way, money could be got from the Americans, because they would have to buy paper with these stamps on, or else have none that was good. This law was called *The Stamp Act*.

11. The Americans were very indignant because of this attempt to get their money. In Virginia, a great Patriot, named Patrick Henry, boldly advised the people to write bargains on whatever paper they pleased, and pay no attention to the Stamp Act.

48



PATRICK HENRY IN THE VIRGINIA ASSEMBLY.

12. Henry charmed every body by his manner of speaking. When, in the Virginia Legislature, he boldly defied the king and his government, and in speaking of the danger a monarch was in

QUESTIONS.—10. What can you tell of stamps and the Stamp Act? 11, 12. What can you tell about Patrick Henry?

The Stamp Act Congress.Sons of Liberty.Repeal of Stamp Act.

who oppressed his people, he had said, "Caesar had his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third"—he was interrupted by persons who cried, "Treason! Treason!" Henry finished by saying—"may profit by their example; if that be treason, make the most of it."

13. All over the country the people were very much excited. The ministers in their pulpits, speakers at public meetings, and the newspapers spoke against the Stamp Act. At length men were appointed in several colonies to meet in New York in the Autumn of 1765, to talk the matter over, and advise the people what to do.

14. This meeting was called the Stamp Act Congress. Very wise men were there; and they wrote excellent letters to the king, and to the English Parliament or Legislature, asking both to be just toward the Americans. They also wrote what they called a Declaration of Rights, or a statement of what privileges they were entitled to under the constitution and laws of England and their own charters.

15. After that, the people resolved to have nothing to do with the stamps. Men who had agreed to sell them were insulted everywhere. Many persons formed societies, and called themselves *Sons of Liberty*. Merchants agreed not to buy any more goods in England, while that act was a law; and the women spun wool and flax, and made cloth for their brothers and husbands to wear, rather than have them buy it in England.

16. The king and his ministers soon saw that they had made a serious mistake. The great William Pitt, of whom I have told you [page 101], was in Parliament, and advised the repeal of the Stamp Act; that is its being done away with. His advice was taken. The Act was repealed in the spring of 1766, and there were great rejoicings in England and America.

17. The advisers of the king not knowing how to obtain as much money as they wanted, determined to try some other way to get it from the Americans. So they induced Parliament (for

**QUESTIONS.**—13. What can you tell of the excitement of the people? 14. What can you tell of the Stamp Act Congress? 15. What did the American men and women do? 16. What was done in England?

only Parliament could do it) to decree that the Americans should pay to the king's officers so much money whenever they bought any tea, paper, glass, painters' colors, etc., brought in ships.

18. Knowing that the Americans would object to this, they sent soldiers over here to compel the people to pay the money. This made the Americans very angry. They could not bear the thought of being enslaved by soldiers; and, in every colony, the Legislature took the matter in hand. In the year 1768, almost every Colonial Assembly had declared that Parliament had no right to tax the Americans, unless Americans were allowed to become members of Parliament. Their opinion was, that

TAXATION WITHOUT REPRESENTATION IS TYRANNY.

19. But the king, his advisers, and Parliament, did not mind what the Americans said. They sent officers over to collect the duties or tax, and threatened to send more soldiers, if the Americans did not become quiet, and pay the money without saying a word against it.

20. Those proud men in England did not know what bold, and wise, and good men they were dealing with, or they would never have acted so foolishly and wickedly. The tax-gatherers came, but they were treated with contempt. In Boston they were insulted, driven from their houses, and compelled to take shelter in a fort in the harbor.

21. General Gage, who, you remember [verse 63, page 106], was made governor at Montreal, was then in Halifax with an army. He went to Boston, with many soldiers, to compel the people to pay the duties or tax. It was a quiet Sabbath morning in September, 1768, when he marched into the town, with flags flying and drums beating, as if it had been a conquered city. But the people, strong in the right, felt no dismay.

22. The colonial governors became more proud, insolent, and overbearing, when they saw the determination of the English

QUESTIONS.—17. What else was done to get money from the Americans? 18. What was done to force the Americans to pay money? What did the Assemblies do? 19. What did the king and Parliament do? 20. What then happened, and why? 21. What can you tell about Gates's arrival in Boston?

---

Boldness of the Boston boys. Their demand for redress. The soldiers and citizens.

---

government to force the Americans into obedience. They treated them as rebels, and in every way the Americans were irritated beyond endurance. Yet they acted manly and respectful, while they were firm and unyielding.

23. Even the children partook of the boldness of their fathers and mothers. On one occasion, in Boston, the soldiers had beaten down some snow-hills which the boys had raised. This had been done before, and the lads determined not to endure it longer. The larger boys held a meeting, and several of them were appointed to see General Gage about it.

24. When the boys entered Gage's room, he asked why so many children had called upon him. "We come, sir," said the tallest boy, "to demand satisfaction." "What!" said the general, "have your fathers been teaching you rebellion, and sent you to exhibit it here?" "Nobody sent us, sir," replied the boy, while his eyes flashed, and his checks reddened, at being accused of rebellion.

25. The lad then told Gage how the soldiers had broken down their snow-hills, and how, when they complained, they were called young rebels. "Yesterday," he continued, "our works were destroyed the third time, and we will bear it no longer." The general's heart was touched by the noble courage of the boy. "The very children here," he said to an officer at his side, "draw in a love of liberty with the air they breathe." He then assured the boys that their snow-hills should not be touched again.

26. The soldiers in New York and Boston became very insolent, and they and the citizens frequently quarreled. In the latter city, on the 5th of March, 1770, a quarrel took place, and that evening there was a riot. Three citizens were killed, and four were dangerously wounded, by the soldiers.

27.. The excitement was very great. All the bells of the city were rung, and no doubt there would have been a great deal of bloodshed, if the governor had not promised justice to the people.

Questions.—22. How did the governors act? 23, 24. What did soldiers do to Boston boys? 24, 25. What can you tell about brave Boston boys? 26. What sad event happened in Boston? 27. What then was done?

---

The tax upon tea.The Regulators in North Carolina.

---

They demanded the instant removal of the troops from Boston. This was done, and quiet was restored. The "Boston Massacre," as it was called, was long remembered.

28. The advisers of the king, seeing how much trouble there was in America, concluded to take the tax off of every thing, except tea. This was continued, because they wished to assert the *right* of Parliament to tax the Americans.

29. But the Americans would not be satisfied so long as a single tax remained without their consent. It was not the *amount* of the tax that they cared for, but they denied the *right* to tax them at all. Seeing that the Americans were firm, and would not buy goods in England, to the great hurt of the merchants there, the ministers tried to put the tax upon tea, in another shape, as I shall explain presently. But it would not do. "No taxes, without our consent," said the Americans.

30. In North Carolina the home taxes were very heavy, and the people joined in the arrangement of measures to regulate affairs. These associations were in the back settlements, and the members were called Regulators.

31. The governor, finding his officers could not collect the taxes there, marched to these districts himself, with a body of soldiers. The Regulators now prepared to meet him, and in May, 1771, they had quite a battle near the Allamance creek. The Regulators were defeated, and several leaders were hanged. From that time the people hated the rule of the king and his governors.

32. A year later, the people of Rhode Island showed their defiance, by burning a vessel belonging to the king, which was in Narraganset Bay, to enforce the collection of taxes. On a starry night in June, 1772, Captain Whipple and more than sixty men, went in a boat and set the vessel on fire. Three years afterward, the Captain of a British vessel wrote to the leader—"You, Abraham Whipple, on the 17th of June, 1772,

QUESTIONS.—28. What change in taxing was made? 29. How did the Americans feel about it, and act? 30. What can you tell about the Regulators in North Carolina? 31. What can you tell about a battle there? 32. What occurred in Narraganset Bay in 1772? What three years afterward.

Captain Whipple and the *Gaspè*. A new scheme. Destruction of tea in Boston harbor.

burned his majesty's vessel, the *Gaspè*, and I will hang you at the yard-arm.  
JAMES WALLACE."

Whipple immediately replied :

"To SIR JAMES WALLACE :

"SIR,—Always catch a man before you hang him.

"ABRAHAM WHIPPLE."

Whipple was neither caught nor hanged.

33. The English merchants complained because the Americans would not buy goods of them while there was a tax upon tea. So the king's advisers thought to please the Americans by making an arrangement with the East India Company, that brought all the tea from China, to sell it at a less price to the Americans. The tax, also, was made very small.

34. Now, thought Lord North (the chief minister) and the East India Company, all will be well ; and ship after ship was filled with tea and sent to America. But all was not well. There was yet a TAX upon tea, though ever so small, and the Americans would not yield an inch.

35. The ships arrived, but nowhere was the tea allowed to be sold. In most places it was not permitted even to be landed. In Boston the people had resolved beforehand what to do, when any tea ships should arrive. The captains were to be ordered to leave the harbor at once, and if they refused, their cargoes were to be destroyed.

36. Two ships came to a Boston wharf in cold December, 1773, and would not leave. The people held a great meeting in Faneuil Hall ; and at dusk, a large number of men, dressed like Indians, went on board the vessels, broke open every chest of tea, and cast the contents into the water. So, as



FANEUIL HALL.

QUESTIONS.—33. What can you tell about English merchants and the king's advisers ?  
34. What can you tell about tea sent to America ? 35. What can you tell about the tea that came ? 36. What happened in Boston and its harbor ?

---

Punishment of the Boston people.

Preparations for war.

Samuel Adams.

---

they said at the time, "Boston harbor was made a great tea-pot!"

37. When news of this event reached England, the king, his advisers, and the Parliament, were very angry, and they resolved to punish the people of Boston by prohibiting vessels from leaving or entering that harbor.

38. On the 1st of June, 1774, General Gage came to Boston as Governor of Massachusetts, and troops were ordered there to carry out the measures for punishing the people. Of course, all business was stopped, and the inhabitants suffered very much. But the patriots all over the country sent them food and other necessaries, and a considerable amount of money was sent to them from London. So they managed to get along, though it was hard work, I assure you.

39. The patriots of Massachusetts were not discouraged, even in the midst of their sufferings. They knew themselves to be right, and remembered that

"Thrice armed is he who has his quarrel just."

They relied upon God for guidance and aid, and they found that reliance to be not in vain.

40. It was now perceived by the patriots all over the land, that war was probable, and they prepared their minds for it. Certain men, called Committees of Correspondence, were chosen in each colony, to give and receive information. Those of Massachusetts seemed to be the most active of all, for persecution gave them strength.

41. Among these, no one was more active than Samuel Adams, who, from the beginning, had been one of the firmest opposers of the king and his advisers. At his suggestion, the patriots of Massachusetts met in council, and sent forth an invitation to all the colonies, to choose men to meet in a general Congress, and consult upon what was best to be done.

QUESTIONS.—37. How did the king and his friends feel and act? 38. What can you tell of Gage, and the punishment of the Boston people? 39. What can you say of the Massachusetts patriots? 40. What can you tell about Committees of Correspondence? 41. What can you tell about Samuel Adams and other Massachusetts patriots?

First Continental Congress.

The first union.

Proceedings of Congress.

42. The idea of UNION now filled all minds and hearts. The newspapers were also filled with it; and some of them had at their head the representation of a snake in parts, each part representing a separate colony. Underneath it were the words, *Unite, or Die*—that is, the colonies must form a Union, or become slaves.



SNAKE DEVICE.



CARPENTERS' HALL.

5-0  
43. The whole country was much excited during the summer; and before August, delegates for the Congress were appointed in all the colonies but Georgia. These met in Carpenters' Hall, Philadelphia, on the 5th of September, 1774. That assembly is known as the First Continental Congress.

44. Peyton Randolph, a great patriot of Virginia, was chosen President of the Continental Congress, and Charles Thomson of Pennsylvania was appointed Secretary. Then it was that a union of the colonies was really commenced, and the first grand step was taken toward forming our noble Republic, THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

45. That Congress continued fifty days. The members showed so much wisdom and firmness, that the greatest men of Europe were astonished. When they separated, they agreed to meet again on the 10th of the next May, unless, in the mean while, the king and his advisers and the Parliament, should treat the Americans justly, when there would be no necessity for such meeting.

46. But the king and Parliament were not just to the Americans; and before the 10th of the next May, British troops and armed patriots had commenced THE REVOLUTION—the old War for Independence. Of this I shall now tell you.

QUESTIONS.—42. What can you tell about the union of the people? 43. What can you tell about the First Continental Congress? 44. What can you tell about the meeting of the Congress? 45. What did the Congress do? 46. What can you say of the king and Parliament?

---

Continued preparations for war. Alarm of General Gage. Gathering of the Patriots.

---

## SECTION II.

### FIRST YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1775.]

1. England, Scotland, Wales, and Ireland, formed one kingdom, called Great Britain. Hereafter, I shall say *Great Britain* instead of *England*, and the *British* instead of the *English*. Do not forget this.

2. During the summer of 1774, the Americans made preparations for war, for they saw no disposition in the king and Parliament to be just. They made guns and gunpowder, practiced military movements, and formed themselves into companies to be ready for battle at a minute's warning. On this account they were called Minute-men.

3. General Gage became alarmed. He was afraid the people of Massachusetts would attack him and his troops, so he built a strong wall of wood, and stone, and earth, across what is called Boston Neck, and placed cannons there, to keep the patriots away.

4. Early in September the news went abroad that the British were firing cannon-balls upon Boston, from their ships. The Minute-men, from every direction, started for Boston, and within two days full thirty thousand of them were on their way. The story was not true; but General Gage was made to see how dangerous it would be to provoke the people.

5. The patriots felt their strength, and paying no attention to what Gage said, ninety of them met at Salem, formed what they called a Provincial Congress, and taking all matters of government into their own hands, they prepared for war in earnest. This was the first really independent government ever formed in America.

6. When the king and his advisers heard of these things, they

QUESTIONS.—1. What countries formed Great Britain? 2. What did the Americans do in 1774? 3. What did General Gage do? 4. What can you tell about the gathering of the Minute-men? 5. What can you tell about an independent government?

---

**British troops in Boston.****Conflicts at Lexington and Concord.****The effect.**

---

were at their wits' ends. Dr. Franklin was then in London, and he begged them to treat the Americans well. Good men in Parliament did the same, but they would not listen. They went right on doing more and more to make the Americans dislike them.

7. When the trees budded, in the spring of 1775, there were three thousand British troops in Boston, sent there to frighten the Americans. Yet they were not frightened. They saw that they must fight for freedom, or be slaves, and they resolved to defy the fleets and armies of Great Britain.

8. With all these soldiers, Gage felt strong. Hearing that the patriots were collecting powder and balls, muskets and provisions, at the village of Concord, he sent a party of soldiers, on the night of the 18th of April, to seize them and carry them to Boston.

9. These ~~troops~~ reached Lexington at daylight. A good many Minute-men were watching for them there. A sharp fight took place, and eight of the patriots were killed, and the rest driven away. This was the beginning of the old War for Independence.

10. The British now marched on to Concord to seize the Stores, and there they had another fight with the patriots. They soon found that the Minute-men were coming from all quarters, so they turned and fled to Boston as fast as their feet could go. When they got there, they found that two hundred and seventy-three of their number had been killed or wounded.

11. When the news of this bloodshed became generally known, there was great excitement among the patriots all over New England and elsewhere. Hundreds of people, armed and unarmed, started for Boston; and, before the 1st of May, full twenty thousand men were there, building fortifications to keep the British army from coming out of the city. Among them were Putnam, Stark, and other brave soldiers, who had learned the art of fighting in the French and Indian War.

QUESTIONS.—6. What was done in England? 7. What can you tell about British troops and Americans? 8. What did Gage do? 9. What can you tell of a fight at Lexington? 10. What of a fight at Concord and flight to Boston? 11. What happened when these fights were known?

---

Capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point.

## Breed's Hill fortified.

12. In other parts of the country the *Sons of Liberty* took bold steps. They seized powder, cannons, muskets, and other things; told the royal governors to leave the country as soon as possible, and plainly said to the king and Parliament, "Now we are ready to fight for our freedom. Send on your soldiers as soon as you please."

13. At Fort Ticonderoga, the British had a great many cannons and much powder. Early in May, some Connecticut, Massachusetts, and Vermont people, led by Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold, went across Lake Champlain one night, and just at daylight rushed into that fort, in spite of the sentinels.

14. Ethan Allen was a rough, but very brave man. He called to the British commander, who was in bed, to give up the fort. The commander came to the door, and said, "By what authority do *you* demand it?" "By that of the Great Jehovah and the Continental Congress!" shouted Allen. The commander thought the authority sufficient, and gave up the fort. Crown Point was taken two or three days afterward, and the cannons from Ticonderoga were conveyed to Boston, and used against the British.

15. Toward the close of May, several war-vessels came from England with troops and those famous soldiers, Generals Howe, Clinton and Burgoyne, of whom you will hear a great deal. There were then twelve thousand British troops in Boston, and many large war-ships were in the harbor.

16. Feeling very strong, Gage now determined to march out and attack the Americans. The patriots determined that he should not; and on a warm and starry night in June, a thousand of them, under the great patriot, Colonel Prescott, marched silently over Charlestown Neck, to build a redoubt, or sort of fort, on Bunker's Hill, so as to fire cannon-balls directly into Boston. By mistake, in the dark, they fortified Breed's Hill.

17. The British, in Boston, were very much alarmed when they saw this redoubt, almost finished, at dawn of the 17th of June.

QUESTIONS.—12. What did the people do? 13. What can you tell about Ticonderoga and Crown Point? 15. Who and what now came from England? 16. What can you tell about Americans on Breed's Hill?

---

Battle of Bunker's Hill.

## Death of Warren.

They had cannons upon Copp's Hill in Boston, and these, with others in the ships, commenced firing upon the Americans. But the Americans were not harmed.

18. At noon, General Howe, with three thousand British soldiers, crossed over in boats and attacked the redoubt. The Americans had no cannons, but with their muskets they killed a great many of the British, and compelled them to fall back twice. In the mean while, Charlestown, at the foot of the hill, had been set on fire, and the whole scene was terrible.

19. At last the Americans had used up all their powder.



JOSEPH WARREN.

The British had plenty, and rushing up, they drove the patriots from the redoubt. General Putnam was on Bunker's Hill with troops, but could not get them formed in time; so the Americans were completely driven away. One of their best men, and greatest patriots, Gen. Warren, was killed.

20. In this battle the Americans lost in killed, wounded, and prisoners, about four hundred and fifty men. The British lost about eleven hundred. This conflict, though on Breed's Hill, is called the battle of Bunker's Hill, and the tall obelisk of granite, 220 feet in height, that stands where the redoubt was, is called the Bunker's Hill Monument.

21. While these things were taking place in New England, the patriots in the other colonies were just as bold and busy. In Virginia, Patrick Henry, who spoke out so plainly about the Stamp Act, you remember [page 110],



BUNKER'S HILL MONUMENT.

Questions.—17. What did the British do? 18. What can you tell of a fight and a burning town? 19, 20. What more can you tell of the battle of Bunker's Hill? 21. What was done in other colonies?

---

Boldness of Patrick Henry.      The Second Continental Congress.      Washington.

---

talked still more plainly now; and he finished a speech in Richmond with these noble words, **GIVE ME LIBERTY OR GIVE ME DEATH!**

22. Soon after this, Henry marched at the head of a band of Minute-men, and compelled Governor Dunmore, at Williamsburg, to give up some powder he had seized, which belonged to the people. And before the battle of Bunker's Hill, the patriots had driven the royal governor on board of a British war-ship, and he dared not come back.

23. In the back country of North Carolina, the patriots had also been bold and busy. They came together in May, and declared themselves free and independent of British rule. In New York, South Carolina, and Georgia, they seized powder and guns, drove away the royal governors, and declared themselves ready to fight for freedom.

24. While the people were thus excited, the **SECOND CONTINENTAL CONGRESS** met at Philadelphia. The wise men and great Patriots collected there, said to the king—"Be just, and we will lay down our arms, and be your best friends. But know, O king, that we have counted the cost of war, and find nothing so dreadful as slavery. Be just, or we will fight your fleets and armies until we become a free people."

25. The Congress did not wait for the king's answer, but wisely prepared for war. They appointed George Washington, the brave soldier who was with Braddock, twenty years before [page 96], to be the commander-in-chief of the continental armies, with several great Patriots as his chief assistants.

26. Washington went immediately to Cambridge, near Boston, and there, under the shadow of a fine elm-tree, yet standing, he took the command of the army on the 3d of July. That army was made up of all sorts of people, with all sorts of dresses, and all sorts of weapons. Washington began at once to put them in good condition; and all that summer and autumn, and the next

QUESTIONS.—22. What can you tell about Patrick Henry? 23. What did the Patriots do elsewhere? 24. What can you say about the Second Continental Congress? 25. What important thing did Congress do? 26. What can you tell about Washington and the army?

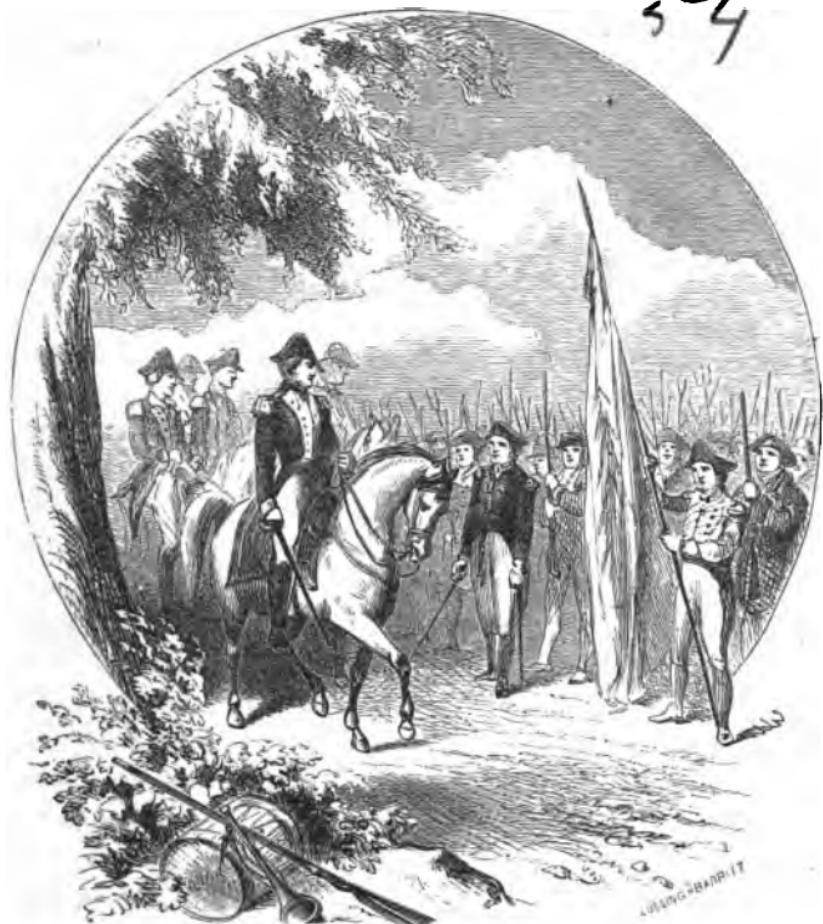
---

 Washington taking command of the army.

---

 Designs against Canada.

54



WASHINGTON TAKING COMMAND OF THE ARMY.

winter, he was employed in efforts to drive the British from Boston. He finally succeeded, as I shall tell you presently.

27. Ticonderoga and Crown Point being in their hands, the Americans resolved to take possession of Canada. An army was collected and placed under the command of two great Patriots and soldiers, Generals Schuyler and Montgomery.

28. This army went down Lake Champlain to its foot, in August, and attempted to take the fort at St. John's, on the Sorel, away from the British. They failed, went back to an

QUESTIONS.—27. What did the Americans now do? 28. What can you tell about the Americans on Lake Champlain?



GENERAL SCHUYLER.

island, and there encamped. General Schuyler was soon afterward taken sick, and went to his home in Albany, and Montgomery became the sole commander.

29. Toward the close of September, Montgomery attacked St. John's, but it was more than a month before he got possession of it. In the mean while, Colonel Ethan Allen, with a small party,

attempted to take Montreal, but were taken themselves. Allen was sent to England a prisoner, in irons, and did not gain his liberty for a long time.

30. Colonel Bedell, of New Hampshire, and a few troops, took the fort at Chamblee, at about the same time; and soon after that, Montgomery was marching as a victor, toward Montreal. That city was given up to him on the 13th of November.

31. Winter was now coming on. Montgomery heard that Arnold was approaching Quebec through the wilderness, and, with a little more than three hundred poorly clad troops, he hastened toward that city to join him, for winter frosts were binding the rivers, and blinding snow was covering the country.

32. That march of Arnold with a thousand men, through forests and swamps filled with snow and ice, was wonderful. He went through the wilderness from the Kennebec river to the St. Lawrence, and was at Point Levi, opposite Quebec, on the 9th of November. He crossed the river, and, with his shivering little army, stood upon the Plains of Abraham [see page 105], and demanded the surrender of the city. He was unsuccessful; and then he marched up the St. Lawrence twenty miles, where he met Montgomery on the first day of December.

33. The united troops now marched directly for Quebec; and for three weeks, in the midst of terrible snow-storms, they tried to get possession of the city. Montgomery finally determined to

QUESTIONS.—29. What was done in Canada? 30. What else was done there? 31. What did Montgomery do? 32. What can you tell about Arnold and his men?

**Attack on Quebec. Death of Montgomery. The Minute-men of Virginia in battle.**

force his way into that strong-walled city, through the gates, and for this purpose he separated his little army into four divisions.

34. In this attempt, while leading one of the divisions, the brave Montgomery was killed. After a combat for several hours, many of the Americans were made prisoners, and Arnold led the remainder away, for there appeared no hope of taking Quebec. Before the middle of June following, the Patriots were driven entirely out of Canada.



GENERAL MONTGOMERY.

35. The Patriots of Virginia were more successful. After Governor Dunmore was driven away from Williamsburg, he collected a large number of Tories and negroes, and commenced destroying the property of Whigs in lower Virginia. The Minute-men soon gathered to oppose him; and after a severe battle at the Great Bridge, near the Dismal Swamp, they drove him to the British ships at Norfolk. In revenge, he burned Norfolk on the 1st of January, 1776; but he was soon afterward compelled to leave the country and go to England.

36. Among the Minute-men of Virginia were brave ones from Culpepper county, whose flag bore the picture of a rattlesnake, with the words, *Don't tread on me*. It said, "Don't tread on me, I have dangerous fangs."



CULPEPPER FLAG.

The Americans said to the king, "Don't tread on us; we will fight." It also had the words of Patrick Henry, "Liberty or Death!"

37. No doubt you wish to know the meaning of Whig and Tory. Their names came from England, where *Tory* meant one who was a friend of the king, and *Whig* one who was opposed to him. All through the Revolution, there were many here who were the friends of the king. These were called **TORIES**, and the Patriots were all called **WHIGS**.

QUESTIONS.—33. What can you tell of the Americans at Quebec? 34. What can you tell of Montgomery, and of the Americans in Canada? 35. What can you tell of events in lower Virginia? 36. What can you tell of the Culpepper flag? 37. How do you explain the meaning of *Whig* and *Tory*?

## SECTION III.

SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1776.]

1. During the summer of 1775, the Continental Congress made every preparation to continue the war. Money was wanted, and enough of gold and silver could not be had. So they issued Bills of Credit, as they were called; that is, a kind



▲ BILL OF CREDIT, OR CONTINENTAL MONEY.

of paper money similar to our bank bills, but printed on coarse paper, and very rough in appearance.

2. These bills the people used freely, expecting to get gold and silver for them after the war. But they did not. Congress issued cart-loads of them. They answered the purpose for the time, but the people lost a great deal by them, for before the war was ended they became worthless.

3. The Congress also ordered some war-vessels to be built; and they gave private persons permission to arm vessels and take

QUESTIONS.—1. 2. What can you tell about Continental money? 3. What did Congress do? and what can you tell about privateers?

---

British preparations for war.Expulsion of the British from Boston.

---

any British ships they might find. These were called Privateers, and soon there were a great many of them on the ocean.

4. Great Britain also made large preparations for war against the Patriots. Besides mustering thousands of soldiers and preparing a great many war-vessels, for the purpose, seventeen thousand German soldiers, called Hessians, were hired and sent over to help make the Americans slaves. How wicked and cruel this was!

5. When Washington heard of these preparations, he resolved to do his best to drive the British from Boston immediately. He then had fourteen thousand soldiers. He fired many cannon-balls upon the city from time to time; and finally, on the evening of the 4th of March, 1776, he sent a strong party to build embankments for cannons on Dorchester Heights, now in South Boston.

6. When the British saw this at daylight, they were alarmed, and Howe ordered troops to go and drive the Americans away. A storm prevented their going. So the Americans completed their works, and the British now saw plainly that the sooner they left Boston the better it would be for them.

7. Howe sent word to Washington, that if he would let him and his troops leave Boston quietly, in his ships, he would do so. Washington consented; and on Sunday, the 17th of March, 1776, the British and a great many Tories, left Boston forever. The American army then took possession of it, to the great joy of the people, and its harbor was opened for business.

8. Before this, a great British soldier, Sir Henry Clinton, left Boston with troops, in ships. Washington thought he might be going to attack New York, so he sent a brave officer, General Charles Lee, to raise troops in Connecticut and go to that city.

9. Clinton heard of this some way, and thought it best not to go into New York harbor. He sailed southward to attack Charleston, and Lee went on by land to watch his movements.

QUESTIONS.—4. What preparations did Great Britain make? 5. What can you tell about Washington at Boston? 6. What did the British perceive and do? 7. What can you tell about the British leaving Boston? 8, 9. What can you tell about Clinton and Lee?

Events in Charleston harbor. Bravery of Jasper. The battle and its results.

10. When Howe sailed from Boston, Washington thought that he, too, might be going to attack New York. He left troops enough to keep Howe from coming back, and then went to New York himself with quite a large army, and built forts there and on the Hudson river.

11. Clinton was joined on the coast of North Carolina by several battle-ships, commanded by a great sea-warrior named Parker, and early in June they all reached Charleston harbor. The Patriots there were prepared for them, and General Lee arrived soon afterward.

12. Within that harbor is an island, on which the Patriots had a fort nearly completed. Five hundred soldiers, under Colonel Moultrie, and many cannons, were placed in it, when they saw the British fleet coming. While Clinton and his men were trying in vain to reach the fort by land, several of the battle-ships came in and fairly rained heavy iron cannon-balls upon it.

COLONEL MOULTRIE.



59

13. These balls did little harm, for the fort was made of soft palmetto logs. One of the balls cut down the staff on which the patriot flag was fastened. The flag fell outside of the fort. A brave young man, named Jasper, climbed down in the midst of the flying cannon-balls, picked up the flag, fastened it upon the ramrod of a cannon, and then placed it on the fort in such a way that it kept flying during the whole battle !

14. This fight lasted almost ten hours. The patriots fired cannon-balls from the fort upon the British ships, so fast and continual, that they were half cut in pieces, and more than two hundred of the people in them were killed or wounded. The ships were dreadfully shattered and their sails torn. They got away from the fort as quickly as possible. The troops went on board the

QUESTIONS.—10. What did Washington do? 11. What was done on the Carolina coasts? 12. What can you tell of a fort near Charleston? 13. What can you tell of a brave young soldier there? 14. What can you tell about the battle?

Desires for Independence.	Action of Congress.	Declaration of Independence.
---------------------------	---------------------	------------------------------

best vessels, and all sailed away, sorry enough that they ever went there.

15. The Americans now felt certain that the British would never be just toward them, and that there was no use in trying to be friends with the king and Parliament. So they thought much of being a free and independent people, without a king, and at liberty to choose their own rulers. First the Patriots in one colony, and then those in another, met together, and talked it over; and finally the Continental Congress took the matter into consideration.

16. In June, 1776, Richard Henry Lee, a great Patriot of Virginia, arose in Congress and declared that the United Colonies were, and ought to be, free and independent states, and then asked other members to think about it, and talk it over. They did so for almost a month, and on the 2d of July Congress agreed to it. Congress then held its meetings in the State House, Philadelphia, and John Hancock was president.

17. Five great Patriots, named Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and Robert R. Livingston, had written a long paper, giving reasons why the Americans ought to be free; and this, with the words of Richard Henry Lee, is called **THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE**.

18. This Declaration was agreed to on the *Fourth of July*, 1776. So, every year, on that day, at sunrise and sunset, we ring the bells and fire the guns; and at noon the soldiers are out with their flags flying, and drums beating. The boys, full of glee, let off crackers from morning till night, and in the evening splendid fire-works are shown, to the delight of every body. This is as it should be, for that was the birth-day of the **UNITED STATES OF AMERICA**.

QUESTIONS.—15. What did the Americans now feel and do? 16. What was done in Congress? 17. What can you tell of a Committee of Congress? 18. What more can you say about the Declaration of Independence?



STATE HOUSE.

---

Destruction of the King's statue.    Battle near Brooklyn.    Escape of the Americans.

---

19. I would like to tell you more about the Declaration of Independence, but I have not time. Yet one thing more I will tell you. In the city of New York was a fine statue, or figure, of the king on horseback. It was made of lead, and covered with gilding. When the people and soldiers there heard of the Declaration of Independence, they pulled down that leaden statue, and made bullets of it, with which they fought the British.

20. At about the time of the Declaration of Independence, General Howe came in ships with many troops, and landed on Staten Island, near New York. A month afterward, Sir Henry Clinton came there from the South, with many more troops; and two or three weeks later, a large number of the hired Hessians came and landed there.

21. Washington was in New York with the American army. He sent a large number of them over to Brooklyn, to build a fort and oppose the British, for he believed that they would come to the attack of New York by that way. And so they did. They crossed the Narrows between Long and Staten Islands, marched up, and near Brooklyn they had a severe battle with the Americans. Many of the Patriots were killed and made prisoners, and the British were the victors.

22. The Americans called their strong work at Brooklyn, Fort Putnam. In and near that the remainder of their army were collected, while the British prepared to attack them again. Early on the third morning after the battle (the 30th of August), they all escaped across the East river in boats, under cover of a heavy fog, much to the astonishment and mortification of the British. When the fog rolled away, and the sunlight burst upon Brooklyn and New York, the last boat-load of Patriots had reached the city shore.

23. The Americans were not allowed to remain much longer in New York. Washington saw that the British army was a great deal stronger than his, and that Howe was preparing to

QUESTIONS.—19. What can you tell about a statue of King George? 20. What occurred on Staten Island? 21. What did the Americans and the British do? 22. What can you tell about the escape of the Americans?

---

Battle at White Plains. Capture of Fort Washington. Prisons and prison-ships.

---

cross over and attack his troops. So he prudently left the city, marched to the lofty ground on the Hudson, where Fort Washington had been built, and there formed a strong camp on what was called Harlem Heights.

24. Howe tried to drive the Americans from this position, but could not. Then he resolved to get in their rear, and went up the East river to Westchester county, with a large number of troops, where he was joined by some fresh Hessians. Washington was wide awake, and went into Westchester, too, when both armies marched up the river Bronx to White Plains, watching each other. +

25. The two armies had a pretty severe battle at White Plains on the 28th of October. The Americans were defeated, and fled to the hills of North Castle. A few days afterward, Washington crossed the Hudson river with most of his army, and joined General Greene at Fort Lee, on the Jersey shore, nearly opposite Fort Washington.

26. Less than a fortnight afterward, many Hessians, and some English soldiers, attacked Fort Washington. They took possession of it, after losing a thousand men, and then made more than two thousand Americans prisoners. These, with others, were confined in the loathsome prisons and prison-ships at New York. The most famous of these prison-ships was the *Jersey*, in which thousands of Americans died.

27. Two days after the capture of Fort Washington, Lord Cornwallis (a great English soldier), with six thousand troops, crossed the Hudson, drove Washington and his army from Fort Lee, and for three weeks chased them across New Jersey to the Delaware river at Trenton.



THE JERSEY PRISON-SHIP.

QUESTIONS.—23. What can you tell about the Americans leaving New York? 24. What can you tell about events in Westchester county? 25. What can you tell of a battle at White Plains? 26. What can you tell of a battle at Fort Washington, and of prisoners? 27. What occurred in New Jersey?

---

The Americans on the Delaware.Victory at Trenton.

---

28. The American soldiers were then not more than three thousand in number, and these were wretchedly clad, and half-starved. They crossed the icy Delaware on the 8th of December, and sat down, almost in despair, upon the Pennsylvania shore.

29. But the mind of Washington was full of hope, because he knew that he was engaged in a right cause, and fully believed that God would help the Americans. The Congress, sitting at Philadelphia, knew that the British might easily cross the Delaware, and come and take that city. They were much alarmed, and fled to Baltimore, leaving Washington to do just as he pleased.

30. The British did not cross the Delaware, but formed small camps near it. The Hessians were encamped at Trenton, and Washington resolved to attack them. Christmas was approaching. The Germans always make that a holiday, and Washington very wisely concluded that, after drinking and sporting all day, they would sleep very soundly that night.

31. So, on Christmas night, in the midst of a storm of hail and rain, Washington, with more than two thousand men, and several cannons, crossed the river among the floating ice, eight miles above Trenton, but not in time to reach that town before daylight. The Americans marched in two divisions. One was led by Washington, and the other by General Sullivan. The Hessians were greatly surprised. Their commander was killed, several of his soldiers were slain and wounded, and more than a thousand were made prisoners, and taken to the Pennsylvania shore the same day.

32. This was indeed a brilliant affair. There was great rejoicing among the Patriots all over the country; and the Congress told Washington that he might do just what he liked, for six months. The British were very much astonished and frightened at the boldness of the Americans; and many true Patriots,

QUESTIONS.—28. What can you say about the American soldiers? 29. What can you say about Washington and Congress? 30. What can you tell about the Hessians at Trenton? 31. What can you tell about crossing the Delaware, and battle at Trenton? 32. What was the effect of the battle at Trenton?

who felt afraid when Washington was chased across New Jersey, now came forward and joined his army.

33. Washington now determined to drive the British out of New Jersey. He crossed the Delaware again, with the whole of his little army, and formed a camp at Trenton. The British and Hessians joined, and formed a camp at Princeton, only ten miles off. Such was the situation of the two armies at the close of 1776.

---

## SECTION IV.



THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1777.]

1. The British Parliament acted very strangely. They seemed to think that the Americans were nobodies, and that they might kick and cuff them as they pleased. They appeared not to know how bravely the Patriots had acted against almost thirty thousand choice British troops and fierce Hessians; and no doubt they thought that the whole flurry, as they called it, would soon be over. They refused to do justice to the Americans, and prepared to send more soldiers over to fight them.

2. The Continental Congress, on the contrary, acted wisely and promptly. They knew how the French hated the English, so they sent Silas Deane to France, to ask the French king to help the Americans against his old enemy. King Louis was glad of the opportunity, and promised great things. Then, after the Declaration of Independence was over, Congress appointed Silas Deane, Dr. Franklin, and Arthur Lee, to be ministers or agents for the Americans, in France.

3. The Congress had, long before, perceived the necessity for laws to bind all of the colonists together. In 1775, Dr. Franklin wrote such laws, and others did so afterward. Pretty early in

QUESTIONS.—33. What did the two armies do? 1. How did the British Parliament think and act? 2. What did Congress do? 3. What can you tell about Articles of Confederation?

Articles of Confederation.The armies at Trenton.Battle at Princeton.

DR. FRANKLIN.

1777 these were agreed to. They were called ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION, or solemn agreements between the different colonies to act as one State, in many things. These lasted ten years. I will tell you by-and-by what was then done.

4. We will now see what the American and British armies near the Delaware aware were doing. Washington had five thousand soldiers at Trenton on New Year's day. On the 2d of January, Cornwallis came from Princeton with a great many troops to attack them. He arrived at evening, and concluded to wait until the next morning, when he thought it would be very easy for him to conquer the Patriots.

5. The Americans were in great peril, and hardly knew what to do. Cornwallis was very strong, the ground was so soft that the cannons could not be dragged away, and they could not get across the Delaware. Toward midnight the wind blew cold, and the ground was frozen. Washington then left some men to keep his camp-fires burning, and, with his whole army and cannons, he marched off to Princeton before daylight.

6. Cornwallis was astonished and mortified, when he found Washington had escaped. Just then he thought he heard the rumbling of thunder in the direction of Princeton. He listened, when one of his officers said, "Thunder, on a clear morning in mid-winter! No, no; to arms, general! Washington has out-generaled us, and is attacking our troops at Princeton. You hear his cannon. Let us fly to the rescue!"

7. He was right. Just at sunrise, on that keen frosty morning, the Americans attacked a large party of British soldiers at Princeton, and, after a severe battle, became victors. But they lost General Mercer, one of the bravest and best Patriots in the army. He was wounded, taken to a house near by, and there died a few days afterward.

QUESTIONS.—4. What occurred at Trenton? 5. What did the Americans do? 6. What can you tell about Cornwallis? 7. What can you tell of a battle at Princeton?

---

British driven from New Jersey.Marauding expeditions.

---

8. Cornwallis had hastened to Princeton, but when he arrived not a patriot soldier was there. Washington had led them on to a resting-place many miles distant, and then they all encamped among the hills of East Jersey, at Morristown, until spring.

9. From Morristown, Washington sent out parties to attack the British and armed Tories, and finally drove them out of New Jersey, except at two places. Then Congress returned to Philadelphia; and every body now began to think that the Americans would surely drive all the British and Hessians back to Europe.

10. It was almost June before the two armies commenced the summer campaign in earnest. The most of the British were in New York and neighborhood; and General Howe sent out strong parties of soldiers to do mischief to the Americans, in New Jersey, on the Hudson river, and in Connecticut.

11. One of the meanest of these expeditions was under General Tryon, who had been Governor of New York. He went up Long Island Sound with British and Tory soldiers, landed between the villages of Norfolk and Fairfield, and, marching into the country, he burned Danbury. He also treated the innocent inhabitants very cruelly.

12. The Patriots of Connecticut soon gathered, under those brave soldiers, Arnold, Wooster and Silliman, and drove the invaders back to their ships, after a sharp battle at Ridgefield. There General Wooster was killed. Tryon lost altogether about three hundred men before he escaped to his vessels.

13. The Americans concluded that they could play at this game, too. So toward the close of May, a party under Colonel Meigs crossed Long Island Sound to Sag Harbor, burned a dozen British vessels there, also the store-houses and their contents, and carried off ninety prisoners, without losing one of their own men.

14. The British held possession of Rhode Island for several months. Prescott, then commanding general, was a tyrant, and

QUESTIONS.—8. What followed? 9. What did Washington and Congress do? 10. What can you say about the summer campaign? what was first done? 11. What can you tell of Tryon's expedition? 12. What can you tell of Connecticut Patriots? 13. What did the Americans do?

Washington's perplexity.

March to Philadelphia.

Burgoyne in the North.

treated the people very badly. One night in July, Colonel Barton of Providence, and some others, went across Narraganset Bay unseen, and carried off Prescott from his quarters, without allowing him to dress. These things made the British act a little different, for they saw that the Americans were expert players at their own game.

15. At the close of May, 1777, Washington had almost ten thousand troops with him in New Jersey. For a long time he was perplexed to know what the British army was going to do. It had been arranged in England, that the British should take possession of the country on the Hudson river and Lake Champlain, and thus separate New England from the other colonies.

16. To accomplish this, a large army, under Burgoyne, assembled at St. John's, at the foot of Lake Champlain, in June, and Howe was to send troops up the Hudson. But Howe seemed hardly to know what to do, and his movements perplexed Washington. He went into New Jersey, and tried to draw the Americans into battle. Then he retreated ; and finally, with all of the British troops in New Jersey, he crossed over to Staten Island, and encamped there.

17. In June and July, Burgoyne came up Lake Champlain, a victor, taking Crown Point and Ticonderoga from the Americans, without much trouble, and spreading terror all over the North. At the same time, the British troops in New York seemed to be

preparing to go up the Hudson. All at once, eighteen thousand of them, with Howe at their head, went on board ships commanded by Howe's brother, and sailed southward.

18. Washington now saw plainly that Howe was proceeding to capture Philadelphia. He immediately marched to that city with the main portion of the Patriot army, and there he was first visited by La Fayette, a young and

QUESTIONS.—14. What occurred on Rhode Island? 15. What can you tell about the British plans? 16. What can you tell of the movements of Burgoyne and Howe? 17. What further can you tell about British troops? 18. What did Washington perceive and do?

GENERAL LA FAYETTE.



---

La Fayette.

Battle on the Brandywine.

The British victorious.

---

brave soldier who had just come from France to fight for the Americans. ~~X~~

19. La Fayette was a noble young man. He had heard how the Americans were striving for freedom, and he was anxious to help them. He had just married a beautiful girl, and his friends tried to keep him at home. But she, generous as he, cheerfully consented to his departure, and he came here full of love for the Americans. He joined the army under Washington. You will hear much more about him.

20. Howe went up the Chesapeake Bay, because the Americans had obstructed the Delaware river. He landed near the head of it, and proceeded toward Philadelphia. Washington was marching to meet him. On the Brandywine creek, several miles above Wilmington, the two armies had a very hard battle, for a whole day, and the British were victorious.

21. In that battle, La Fayette was badly wounded in his leg, and many good and brave men were lost. Full twelve hundred of the Americans were killed, wounded, or made prisoners, and the British loss was about eight hundred. This occurred on the 11th of September.

22. Washington and his thinned troops fled to Philadelphia, followed by the British. The Congress left that city, and met, first, at Lancaster, and then at York, where they remained several months. Fearing the British might take their provisions and other things at Reading, the Americans soon left Philadelphia, and marched in that direction. Then Howe encamped at Germantown, four miles distant, and prepared to make Philadelphia the residence of his army for the winter.

23. I have told you that the Americans had put obstructions in the Delaware, below Philadelphia, to keep ships from sailing up to that city. Near there, on each side of the river, they had built a fort. These must be taken from the Patriots, or the British army at Philadelphia could not get provisions by water.

24. Lord Howe's fleet came up to the obstructions, and two

QUESTIONS.—19. What can you tell about La Fayette? 20. What did the two armies do? 21. What can you tell about the battle on the Brandywine? 22. What can you tell of the movements of the two armies? 23. What can you tell about forts on the Delaware?

---

Capture of the forts on the Delaware. Battle at Germantown. Burgoyne victorious.

---

thousand Hessian soldiers attacked Fort Mercer, on the New Jersey side. Soon afterward, British soldiers attacked Fort Mifflin, on the Pennsylvania shore; and after a brave defense, both had to be given up to Howe's troops. Then the obstructions were removed, and several British ships went up to the city.

25. Toward the close of September, Washington came down the Schuylkill with his whole army, and early on the morning of the 4th of October, fell upon the British at Germantown. They fought several hours, when the Americans were beaten, with a loss about equal to that on the Brandywine.

26. Washington and his army then marched back, and encamped at White Marsh. Soon afterward the whole British army went into Philadelphia, where they remained all winter. A little later the American army marched to Valley Forge, built huts, and remained there until spring, suffering dreadfully for the want of food and clothing.

27. Let us now see what Burgoyne was doing. The Americans at Ticonderoga, under General St. Clair, were too weak to oppose Burgoyne; so they fled, and he took possession of the fort. A part of Burgoyne's army pursued them, overtook them at Hubbardton, in Vermont, and there a hard fight occurred.

28. Here, again, the Americans were beaten. The same evening, some of the British armed boats, filled with soldiers, came up Lake Champlain to Skenesborough (now Whitehall), and destroyed a great quantity of provisions belonging to the Americans.

29. General Schuyler was the chief commander of all the American troops in the North. These were very few, and most of them were discouraged. Every thing appeared gloomy, we may be sure; and the people began to think that Burgoyne would eat his Christmas dinner at Albany, as a victor, which he had boasted he would do.

30. Schuyler set his soldiers to tearing down the bridges, and felling trees across the roads along which he knew Burgoyne

QUESTIONS.—24. What can you tell of battles on the Delaware? 25. What can you tell about the battle at Germantown? 26. What did the two armies now do? 27. What did Burgoyne and his army do? 28. What battle occurred? and what happened at Skenesborough? 29. What was the state of things at the North?

---

Battle of Bennington.Death of Jane McCrea.

---

would come. In this way, he made the victor's march slow, and enabled himself to go down the Hudson, and collect the people to fight the British.

31. It was the last of July when Burgoyne reached Fort Edward. Then his provisions were nearly gone, and he sent a party of Hessians and other troops to seize some cattle and food belonging to the Americans, which he heard were at Bennington, in Vermont.

32. The people all through that region shouldered their muskets, and, led by the brave General Stark, fought the invaders on the 16th of August, and killed, wounded, and made prisoners, a thousand of them. Burgoyne was now worse off than ever, and hardly knew what to do.

33. Here I must tell you a short, sad story. A beautiful young girl, named Jane McCrea, lived at Fort Edward, and had a lover in Burgoyne's army. When that army approached Fort Edward, the lover sent two Indians to bring her in safety to the British camp. She was shot near a spring, by the way. Some said she was killed by the Indians, who quarreled about some rum the lover was to give them; and others said she was shot by accident.

34. Burgoyne had offered the Indians so much money for every scalp (the hair and skin of the top of the head) they would bring him; and the people generally believed that the Indians had killed this beautiful young girl for her scalp, which they carried into the camp. O, how angry the people were with Burgoyne for employing the cruel Indians at all! It made thousands of young men join the American army, to fight, and drive away, such wicked invaders.

35. While Burgoyne was coming toward the Hudson, St. Leger, a British soldier, was marching from Oswego toward the Mohawk Valley, to attack the Americans at Fort Schuyler, then the name of Fort Stanwix, of which I have told you on pag. 102. He led many Indians under a great chief, named Brant, and a large number of Tories.

QUESTIONS.—30. What did Schuyler do? 31. What can you tell about Burgoyne and his army? 32. What can you tell of the battle of Bennington? 33, 34. Tell the story about Jane McCrea? 35. What can you tell about St. Leger and others?

Scenes in the Mohawk Valley.

Battles near Saratoga.

Capture of Burgoyne.



JOSEPH BRANT.

36. The people of the Mohawk Valley were very much alarmed. A large number of them, led by General Herkimer, had a fight with the Tories and Indians at Oriskany, when they were beaten, and their brave general was so badly wounded that he died. Then General Arnold, who had been sent to help them, appeared, and St. Leger and his white and red savages fled to Lake Ontario.

37. Burgoyne, very much disheartened, marched down to Saratoga. General Gates was then in chief command of the Patriots at the North, and had a camp at Stillwater, strongly defended by fortifications, built by a brave and generous son of Poland, named Kosciuszko.

38. The two armies came to battle on the morning of the 19th of September, and fought hard all day. They battled again on the 7th of October; and ten days afterward, Burgoyne and his whole army, almost six thousand in number, were made prisoners by the Americans.



KOSCIUSZKO.

39. This was more than two months before Christmas. Burgoyne dined in Albany much earlier than he expected to, but not as a victor. He was a prisoner, and a guest at the table of General Schuyler, who generously forgave the British commander for burning his house and mills at Saratoga.

40. On the day before Burgoyne's last battle, Sir Henry Clinton and a large num-

QUESTIONS.—36. What occurred in the Mohawk Valley? 37. What can you tell of the two armies? 38. What can you tell of two battles? 39. What more can you tell about Burgoyne?

GENERAL BURGOYNE.

---

Events in the Hudson Highlands.

## Valley Forge.

ber of British soldiers, attacked Forts Clinton and Montgomery, two strong places in the Hudson highlands, belonging to the Americans. They took them both; and then many troops went up the river in ships and burned the village of Kingston. They hoped, in this way, to help Burgoyne. But it was too late.

41. When the news that Burgoyne was taken, had spread, there was great joy all over the country. The British were astonished, and the Tories were dreadfully frightened. And when the French King heard of it, he said, "Well, the Americans help themselves pretty well; I guess it will be safe now for me to send soldiers and ships to help them more, and England may say what she pleases."

42. At the close of 1777, the Third Year of the War for Independence, the Americans felt very much encouraged, for they had done wonders during the campaign, and the good opinion of the world was on their side.

---

## SECTION V.

## FOURTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1778.]

1. Twenty miles northwest from Philadelphia is a little valley that opens upon a wide plain along the banks of the Schuylkill river. Through it runs a stream on which, before the War for Independence, was a forge, where iron was made into various things. It was called the valley forge, and after a while the whole place was named Valley Forge.

2. To that little valley Washington led the American army from Whitemarsh, through the snow, in cold December. Many of the soldiers were barefooted, and left marks of blood in their tracks in the snow.

QUESTIONS.—40. What was done on Hudson's river? 41. What was the effect of the news of the capture of Burgoyne? 42. How did the Americans now feel? 1. What can you tell about a little valley? 2. What happened there?

---

The Americans at Valley Forge. Flight of the British. Chase of the Americans.

---

3. There the soldiers built rude huts, and spent the dreary winter, thinly clothed and half-starved. They were more willing to suffer so, than to lose their freedom and become slaves to the king and Parliament. At the same time, the British army were enjoying every comfort in Philadelphia. Then it was that the good Washington prayed in secret for God to help his countrymen, and his prayers were heard, and answered.

4. By-and-by, when the snow had melted, and the tree-buds began to open, news came that the French King would send soldiers and ships to help the Americans. It made them very joyful. Then came news that the king and Parliament would now do right. Then they were still more joyful. But when they remembered how often they had been deceived, they would not believe it. It was well they did not.

5. In the pleasant month of May, General Howe sailed for England, and left the British army in charge of Sir Henry Clinton. They gave Howe a great ball and feast, before he left. At the same time the Americans, who loved freedom better than all such things, were suffering at Valley Forge.



GENERAL CLINTON

6. News now came that the French King had sent one of his war-sailors, named D'Estaing, with many ships, to take the British vessels in the Delaware. The British commander, Lord Howe, was frightened, and left that river as soon as possible. Clinton was also alarmed, and left Philadelphia, with all his army, on the 18th of June. They fled across New Jersey toward Sandy Hook, to get upon Lord Howe's ships that lay at anchor there.

7. When Washington heard of these movements, he put his army at Valley Forge in motion, crossed the Delaware and pursued the British to Monmouth, in West Jersey. There, on one

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell about the American and British soldiers? 4. What news delighted the Americans. 5. What can you tell about General Howe's departure? 6. What can you tell about the French vessels and the British fleet and army? 7. What can you tell of Washington and a battle?

---

Battle at Monmouth.

Continued flight of the British.

The French fleet.

---

of the hottest days ever known, they had a terrible battle. It lasted from nine o'clock in the morning until dark. It was on the 28th of June, 1778.

8. Fifty soldiers died of thirst that day. One soldier, who was firing a cannon, was shot dead. His wife, a young Irish woman, named Molly, who had been bringing water to him, took his place at the gun, and kept firing it all through the battle. Washington was so pleased with her for this, that he gave her the pay of her husband after that, and she wore his soldier-clothes and was called Captain Molly as long as she lived.

9. Washington intended to renew the battle in the morning. But that night, after the moon was down, while he and his wearied soldiers were sleeping, Clinton and his troops marched silently away in the dark, and escaped to Sandy Hook. Then Clinton wrote to his king how valiantly he withdrew in the broad moonlight. One of our poets made fun of him by writing thus:

"He forms his camp, with great parade,  
While evening spreads the world in shade—  
Then still, like some endangered spark,  
Steals off on tip-toe in the dark;  
Yet writes his king, in boasting tone,  
How grand he marched by light of moon!"

10. Washington and his army marched from Monmouth to the Hudson river, and crossed into Westchester county, while the British proceeded in ships from Sandy Hook to New York. D'Estaing and his war-vessels appeared there in July, but the British ships were safe in Raritan Bay. The water was so shallow between Sandy Hook and Staten Island, that the heavy French ships could not get over and attack those of Lord Howe.



COUNT D'ESTAING.

**QUESTIONS.**—8. What can you tell about Captain Molly? 9. What can you tell about the escape of the British army? 10. What can you tell about the American army and French fleet?

---

Events on Rhode Island.Terrible scenes in the Wyoming valley.

---

11. Washington now determined to drive the British from Rhode Island, and sent La Fayette and General Greene, with some soldiers, to help General Sullivan, who was there with a small army. D'Estaing also went there with his ships, to help them. Early in August, the Patriot army crossed over to the north end of the island, and the French fleet was in Narraganset Bay, near Newport.

12. Many ships from England joined the fleet of Lord Howe, and with these he sailed to attack D'Estaing at Newport. That war-sailor went out to meet them. A terrible storm arose and greatly damaged the ships of both fleets, so that they did not fight. D'Estaing went to Boston to repair his vessels, and left the Americans to help themselves.

13. On the 29th of August a severe battle took place at Quaker Hill, on the north end of Rhode Island, and the Americans were driven away, much disheartened. Many were very angry, because, if the French had helped them there, they might have driven the British away.

14. Most of the Six Nations of Indians, of whom I have told you [verse 6, page 12], fought against the Americans in the Revolution. They were very terrible foes to the white people, especially in the Wyoming, Mohawk, Schoharie, and Cherry valleys, where they murdered men, women, and children, and burnt their houses.

15. Early in July, 1778, a Tory leader, named John Butler, went down into the beautiful valley of Wyoming, in Pennsylvania, at the head of more than a thousand Indians. Most of the strong-men were away, in the American army, and these Indians did about as they pleased. The old men and boys fought them, but without much effect; and at evening the next day, the savages went through the valley, burning houses and killing people everywhere. Terrible, indeed, was that *Massacre of Wyoming*, as it was called.

QUESTIONS.—11. What was done to drive the British from Rhode Island? 12. What can you tell about the French and English fleets? 13. What can you tell of a battle on Rhode Island? 14. What can you tell about the Six Nations? 15. What can you tell about Wyoming?

---

The Indians in the Mohawk Valley.Capture of Savannah.

---

16. While these things were going on, Brant, and some wicked Tories, were at the head of Indians and equally savage white men, in spreading death and terror over the country south of the Mohawk. Many Patriots and their families were murdered and their property destroyed. So dreadful were the events there for three or four years, that the region was called "The dark and bloody ground."

17. In November, D'Estaing sailed for the West Indies, to fight the British there. Lord Howe sent several of his ships to oppose him; and as the British power was thus weakened, Sir Henry Clinton concluded it would be useless to try to do much against Washington for a time. So he sent about two thousand troops, under Colonel Campbell, to attack Savannah, the capital of Georgia.

18. The American soldiers at Savannah were commanded by General Robert Howe. There were only about a thousand of them. These fought nobly, but were finally compelled to give up the city, and flee to the country higher up on the Savannah river. Savannah now became the head-quarters of the British army in the South, and it remained in their possession for almost four years.

19. When the year 1778 drew to a close, the two armies were in a position similar to that which they held toward the close of 1776. The British had gained almost nothing toward conquering the Americans, while the Patriots had discovered their real strength, and had obtained the active alliance of the French, one of the most powerful nations in the world. So the Americans, you perceive, had rather the best of it when the campaign of 1778 was ended.

QUESTIONS.—16. What can you tell about Indians and Tories? 17. What can you tell about the movements of the French and English? 18. What can you tell about an attack on Savannah? 19. What can you say about the two armies at the close of 1778?

## SECTION VI.

FIFTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1779.]

1. Although the Americans had been successful against the British in 1778, the commencement of 1779 was a gloomy one to them. Their bills of credit, or continental money, of which I have told you [page 126], were becoming almost useless, and they could get very little gold and silver; and the promised French army had not arrived. In the South, where the British had now got a foothold, the Patriots were quite weak, and the Tories were very numerous.

2. Washington and the Congress prepared a good plan for the campaign of 1779. It was determined to confine the British to the sea-coast, at the North and at the South, and chastise the Indians and Tories in the interior, or back country.

3. Soon after Campbell took possession of Savannah, General Prevost marched from Florida with troops, and became chief commander of all the British soldiers at the South. General Lincoln was appointed chief commander of the Patriot army there, and early in January he collected quite a large number of troops some twenty miles from Savannah.



GENERAL LINCOLN.

4. Lincoln was on the South Carolina side of the Savannah river. Campbell marched up the Georgia side, and took possession of Augusta. This enabled the British to have communication with their friends, the Creek Indians, in the west, and also encouraged the Tories. But the defeat of a large body of Tories at about that time, greatly alarmed Campbell, and he prepared to march back to Savannah.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you say of American affairs at the beginning of 1779? 2. What plan was prepared? 3. What was done at the South? 4. What occurred on the Savannah river?

---

Defeat of the Americana.

Charleston threatened.

Flight of the British.

---

5. Lincoln sent Colonel Ashe, with a quarter of his little army, to drive Campbell from Augusta, and to pursue him down the Savannah river. Ashe followed Campbell some distance, and then halted and formed a camp. There the Americans were attacked by Prevost in the middle of February. A greater portion of them were killed, made prisoners, or scattered. Many of them were drowned while trying to escape across the Savannah river.

6. This was a great loss to Lincoln, yet he was not discouraged. But Prevost felt stronger; and at the close of April he crossed the Savannah river with two thousand British troops, and a large number of Tories and Creek Indians, and marched for Charleston, the capital of South Carolina. Lincoln, who had been joined by many Americans, after the defeat of Ashe, followed him, to prevent his taking that city.

7. Prevost arrived near Charleston on the 11th of May, and told the Americans that they must give up the city to him immediately, or he would destroy it. They refused, and nobody could sleep in Charleston that night, I assure you, for they expected every moment to have the British cannons firing upon them.

8. When morning came, the scarlet uniforms of the British were seen across the waters upon John's Island, and not a single soldier of the enemy was near Charleston. The Patriots wondered at this, at first, but it was soon explained. Prevost had heard of the approach of Lincoln, and at midnight he started to go back to Savannah, by way of the islands along the coast.

9. At Stono Ferry, just below Charleston, a fight occurred on the 20th of June, in which the Americans got the worst of it. But Charleston was saved, and they were satisfied. Let us now leave the South, and see what was going on at the North all this time.

10. Sir Henry Clinton, at New York, sent out armed parties to plunder the people in Connecticut and other places. In March, Governor Tryon went to Greenwich with some soldiers, and at-

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell about Colonel Ashe and his men? 6. What did Prevost do? 7. What can you tell about Prevost at Charleston? 8. What can you tell about the British leaving Charleston? 9. What happened at Stono Ferry?

Putnam's escape.

Marauding expeditions.

Capture of Stony Point.



GENERAL PUTNAM.

tacked and scattered some American troops, under General Putnam. The general escaped, on horseback, down a steep hill and stone steps, while the British bullets were flying past his head.

11. In May, some British vessels, bearing quite a large number of soldiers, sailed into Hampton Roads and the Elizabeth river, in Virginia. The soldiers plundered the people on both

sides of the river, from Hampton to Norfolk. These same ships and troops went up the Hudson river at the close of the month, and took away from the Americans the fort at Stony Point, just below the Highlands.

12. In July, the same vessels carried Governor Tryon and more than two thousand soldiers to the shores of Connecticut, where they plundered New Haven, and burned the villages of East Haven, Fairfield, and Norwalk. The wicked Tryon then boasted that he was very good because he did not burn every house on the New England coast!

13. But the British did not have it all as they pleased. General Wayne, a brave soldier with Washington in the Highlands, led some Americans, at midnight in July, and attacked the fort on Stony Point, while the British soldiers were asleep. They awoke, and fought desperately.

14. Wayne was the victor. Though badly wounded in the head, he thus wrote to Washington, at two o'clock in the morning—"The fort and garrison, with Colonel Johnson, are ours." The British lost, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, six hundred men. The Americans lost less than one hundred. This was a brilliant act, and the patriots everywhere rejoiced.



GENERAL WAYNE.

QUESTIONS.—10. What can you tell about parties sent out by Clinton? 11. What can you tell about British ships and soldiers in the Elizabeth and Hudson rivers? 12. What was done in Connecticut? 13, 14. What can you tell about Stony Point?

## The War in the West.

## Chastisement of the Indians.

15. Three nights after the capture of Stony Point, Major Henry Lee and a few Americans took from the British a fort where Jersey City, opposite New York, now stands. They killed thirty British soldiers, and made one hundred and sixty prisoners. For these brave deeds, the Congress gave both Wayne and Lee a silver medal.

16. The war extended into the wilderness beyond the Alleghany mountains, where Daniel Boone, the great hunter and pioneer, with others, had made settlements. These had been fighting the Indians in Kentucky for several years. Further north, in the present States of Indiana and Illinois, the British had forts, and the soldiers there were continually urging the Indians to fight the Americans.



DANIEL BOONE

17. The patriots finally resolved to take these forts away from the British. George Rogers Clarke, and a few brave men, marched through the wilderness against them; and in the course of a few months, the Americans captured the forts, and drove the British away. Then the Indians became peaceable.

18. Now it was determined to chastise a part of the Six Nations, for their cruelties. In the summer of 1779, General Sullivan collected an army in the Wyoming Valley, and marched up the Susquehannah into the country of the Senecas. In the course of a few weeks he destroyed forty Indian villages, and a vast amount of corn, fruit, and garden vegetables. After that the Indians feared and hated the Americans; and they named Washington, who had sent these soldiers there, *The Town Destroyer*.

19. Now let us look southward and see what was going on there. Early in September, D'Estaing, the French war-sailor, of whom I have told you, came from the West Indies with his ships, and told the Americans he was ready to help them drive the

QUESTIONS.—15. What other brave deed was done? and what did Congress do? 16. What can you tell about Boone and the Western wilderness? 17. What can you tell of Clarke and his men? 18. How were the Senecas chastised? 19. What now happened in the South?

British from Georgia. General Lincoln immediately marched his army toward Savannah, and the Americans and French commenced an attack upon the British works there, toward the close of September.

20. After firing cannon-balls upon the British works day after day for a fortnight, the two armies concluded to climb the walls and banks, and fight their way into Savannah. This is called taking a place by storm. The battle was a terrible one, and many brave men were killed. Among these was Count Pulaski, another noble soldier of Poland, who came to help the Americans.

21. Sergeant Jasper, the brave young man I have told you about, who picked up the South Carolina flag on the outside of the fort in Charleston harbor, was also killed there. He was holding a flag made by the ladies of Charleston, when a bullet slew him. His last words were, "Tell Mrs. Elliot I lost my life in supporting the colors she presented to our regiment."

22. All at once D'Estaing said he must leave, or his ships might be injured by the autumn storms. So, just as Savannah was about to be given up by the British, the French all left, and the Americans were compelled to abandon it. Lincoln crossed the river and fled toward Charleston, and the British had it all their own way in the South, for some time. I think the Americans had reason to think very lightly of that D'Estaing, don't you?

23. During the summer of 1779, La Fayette was in France, and he persuaded his king to send many more ships, and a large army to help the Americans, as soon as they could be prepared. When the King of England heard of this, he ordered the British soldiers to leave Rhode Island and go to New York, so that the army in America should not be too much scattered. When they were all there, Sir Henry Clinton took a large number of them and sailed southward to attack Charleston. I shall tell you presently what he did.

QUESTIONS.—<sup>20.</sup> What can you tell about the attack on Savannah? <sup>21.</sup> What can you tell of Sergeant Jasper? <sup>22.</sup> How did the French serve the Americans? <sup>23.</sup> What did La Fayette do? What did the British king and soldiers do?

---

American ships.Exploits of Hopkins and others.

---

24. Thus ended the campaign of 1779. Before I go any further I must tell you a little about the sea-fights, or

NAVAL OPERATIONS OF THE REVOLUTION. *f*

25. The Americans were not able to build large ships to fight those of the British, nor did the government have a great many vessels of any kind during the war. But privateers, of whom I have told you [verse 3, page 126], took a great many ships away from the British war-sailors.

26. The first vessels that were built were only gun-boats, used by Washington in the harbor of Boston, against the British ships there. These were made of heavy planks, covered over, and having a big cannon at each end, and small ones on the top.



A GUN-BOAT AT BOSTON.

27. The Congress had some small vessels built early in the war, and two or three large ones before its close. The first regular naval officers were appointed late in 1775. Then Esek Hopkins was made commodore, or chief commander, the same as a British admiral.

28. Hopkins first went against Lord Dunmore (of whom I have told you), on the coast of Virginia. Afterward he went to the Bahama Islands, took a town away from the British, and made the governor of one of the islands a prisoner. Then he took some British vessels on the ocean, and sailed into Narraganset Bay, where his ships were kept a long time by the British, who took possession of Rhode Island.

29. I should like to tell you, if I had time, of a great many brave acts performed by such American war-sailors as Manly, Barry, Biddle, McNeil, Hinman and others; how they made the British very much afraid, and how they took a great many vessels away from them. I might tell you, too, that the British took a great many vessels away from the Americans. So the

QUESTIONS.—25. What can you tell about American vessels? 26. What about gun-boats? 27. What can you tell of naval arrangements? 28. What did Hopkins do? 29. What can you say about other war-sailors?

## Paul Jones.

## His great sea-fight with a British ship.

fights went on upon the ocean, as well as upon the land, until the close of the war.



JOHN PAUL JONES.

30. I must, however, tell you of one of the greatest sea-fights that took place during the war. There was a very brave Scotchman, named John Paul Jones, who fought for the Americans.

Dr. Franklin got the French King to help him fit out some new war-ships on the coast of France. These were placed under the command of Jones, and he

went boldly upon the English and Scotch coasts, and attacked the towns and ships there.

31. The vessel in which Jones sailed was named *Bonhomme Richard*, the French words for *Good Man Richard*. Just at evening, on a bright September day in 1779, this ship fell in with a large British war-ship, named *Serapis*; and during that evening, by the light of the moon, they had a terrible battle. They became lashed together, and then fired cannon balls through and through each other.

32. Sometimes the ships were on fire, but the flames were soon put out. The men fought with swords and pistols, first on one ship, then on the other, until many were killed. So they struggled on, in fire and smoke, for three hours, when the British gave up, and Jones became the victor. He took possession of the *Serapis*, and his own shattered vessel began to sink. Not long afterward it sunk to the bottom of the ocean, and Jones went to France with his prize.

33. When you are older, you will learn more about the sea-fights of the Revolution.

QUESTIONS.—30. What can you tell about John Paul Jones? 31. What can you tell about a terrible sea-fight? 32. What more can you tell of the battle, and the end of it?

## SECTION VII.

SIXTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1780.]

1. When Clinton sailed for Charleston, as I have told you, he left the few British soldiers in New York in charge of Knyphausen, the Hessian General. Washington knew how much the patriots at the South would need help, so, early in the spring, he sent the Baron de Kalb, a brave foreign soldier, with many troops, to assist Lincoln who was then in Charleston.

2. There being but few soldiers on either side at the North, during the spring and summer of 1780, there was not much fighting there. The conflicts were chiefly in the Carolinas, and about these I will now tell you.

3. A strong fleet, with two thousand war-sailors, under Admiral Arbuthnot, bore Clinton and his troops to the South. There was a terrible storm on the way, and a great many horses perished. The British finally landed on the islands and shores thirty miles below Charleston, toward the middle of February. There they remained some time preparing to attack Charleston.

4. General Lincoln was in Charleston with few troops, when the British first landed. That great patriot, Governor Rutledge, immediately commenced arousing the people, and soon large numbers joined Lincoln's army. At the end of March, when the British moved toward Charleston, the Patriots there felt strong enough to oppose them and defend the city.

5. The Americans had built strong works across Charleston Neck, and placed many soldiers in Fort Moultrie in the harbor. Near the town was Commodore Whipple (of whom I have already told you something), [verse 32, page 114], with a small fleet, and along the wharves quite strong defenses had been built.

QUESTIONS.—1. What did Clinton and Washington do? 2. Why was there not much fighting at the North? 3. What can you tell of Clinton's voyage southward? 4. What can you tell of the Patriots in Charleston? 5. What preparations had they made?

Attack on Charleston.Fall of Charleston.The Americans discouraged.

6. On a lovely April morning, Arbuthnot sailed into Charleston harbor, with his great ships, and at the same time the British, under Clinton, came nearer the American works on the Neck. Then the British commanders told Lincoln that he must give up his army and the city at once, or they would destroy or capture both. Lincoln refused to surrender, and told them that he was ready to fight.

7. Not long after this, Lord Cornwallis came with three thousand troops, to help Clinton. The Patriots now saw that there was very little chance for them to keep the city, yet they fought on, and suffered on. At length, late on a pleasant evening in May, the entire British army and navy attacked Charleston. The thunders of two hundred cannons shook the city, and at one time it was on fire in five different places. These terrible scenes continued for three days and nights, when the Americans were compelled to give up. Lincoln, his army, and the citizens, five thousand in number, became prisoners of war. The British also took four hundred cannons.

8. The loss of this Southern army was a dreadful blow to the Patriots, and for a while all hope of being free seemed to be lost forever. The British commander sent large bodies of troops into the country, in various directions, and these built some forts. The Patriots, everywhere, were made to tremble, and for a while all was still. Not a Whig was known to be in arms, in South Carolina. Then Clinton and Arbuthnot, feeling that all was safe, sailed for New York with a large number of troops.



GENERAL GATES.

9. The silence did not continue long. DeKalb was compelled to move slowly, and did not reach the borders of South Carolina until mid-summer, when General Gates took command of the army. The Southern Patriots felt very hopeful when they knew that the conqueror of

QUESTIONS.—6. What did Clinton and Arbuthnot do? 7. What happened soon afterward? 8. What was the effect of the loss of Charleston? 9. What can you tell of other movements?

---

Brave leaders.

Approach of Gates.

Defeat of the Americans at Camden.

Burgoyne was coming, and they began to collect in armed bands.

10. Those brave soldiers, Marion, Sumter, Pickens and Clarke, were soon in motion at the head of troops, and they struck the British and Tories many heavy blows in South Carolina and Georgia. When, in August, Gates and his army marched down from the hill country toward Camden, the Patriots of that region joined him, and he felt strong.

11. Cornwallis had been left in chief command at Charleston. When he heard of Gates' approach, he hastened to Camden, took the lead of the British there (who were under Lord Rawdon), and marched to meet Gates. Their meeting was unexpected to both. It was at midnight, on a sandy road where it crossed a swamp, seven miles from Camden. Their footsteps in the soft sand were unheard.

12. A skirmish occurred there in the dark, and at daybreak a severe battle commenced. The Americans were dreadfully beaten and scattered, and lost a thousand men. The brave DeKalb and other noble soldiers were killed, while General Gates and a few of his troops escaped into North Carolina.

13. This was another severe blow for the Patriots. Within three months, two of their armies in the South had been destroyed, and now the armed bands I have mentioned, were scattered to the winds. All seemed hopeless; and yet the Patriots were not without hope.

14. Cornwallis foolishly thought that harsh treatment would make the Patriots silent, so he commenced oppressing them in every way. But it made them despise him and hate British rule more than before. The Patriots became very indignant, and re-



GENERAL SUMTER.

- QUESTIONS.—10. What can you say of brave Southern leaders? What did Gates do? 11. What can you tell about Cornwallis and the meeting of the armies? 12. What can you tell of a battle? 13. What misfortunes had befallen the Americans? 14. What did Cornwallis do? What was the effect?

solved to strike again for home and freedom, as speedily as possible.

15. Thinking South Carolina conquered, Cornwallis marched into the North State. At the same time he sent out armed parties to frighten the Whigs and encourage the Tories.



LOD CORNWALLIS.

One of these parties, under Major Ferguson, was attacked at King's Mountain by the Patriots early in October, 1780, and after a severe battle, the British were beaten with the loss of a thousand men and fifteen hundred guns. This was as bad a blow for Cornwallis as the battle near Bennington was for Burgoyne, of which I have told you on page 139.

16. While these things were going on in the upper country of the Carolinas, the brave Marion was annoying the British and Tories in the lower country, toward Charleston. He was sly, quick, and successful in his movements, and was called *The Swamp Fox*. Sumter, too, who was called *The Carolina Game Cock*, now appeared at the head of brave Patriots, and the injured people everywhere began to lift up their heads. Cornwallis perceived danger in this, and marching back into South Carolina, he made his camp between the Broad and Catawaba rivers.

17. Here we will leave the South, for a time, to observe important transactions at the North.

18. Very few military movements occurred at the North during the summer of 1780. Early in June, five thousand British soldiers, under General Mathews, marched into New Jersey, burned a small village not far from Elizabethtown, and commenced plundering the inhabitants. They were met at Springfield by a body of Americans from Washington's camp at Morristown, and were driven back to the coast.

19. A fortnight afterward, Clinton having arrived, joined

QUESTIONS.—15. What can you tell of the British movements, and a battle? 16. What can you tell about Marion and Sumter? 18. What can you tell of events in New Jersey?

---

Arrival of the French.

The treason of Arnold.

Mathews, and marching toward Morristown, tried to bring Washington out to fight. They were met by the Americans, under General Greene, at Springfield. A severe skirmish ensued, when the British, after setting fire to the village, fled to Elizabethtown, and across to Staten Island.

20. Early in June, an event caused the Americans to rejoice greatly. A large French fleet arrived at Newport, with six thousand soldiers under a great leader, the Count de Rochambeau. The British now became shy, and did not send out any more marauding expeditions. In fact they began to think it dangerous to go out to fight at all. At that time Clinton was hoping to accomplish all he wished, through the wickedness of an American officer. That officer was the bold soldier, but bad man—Benedict Arnold.

21. General Arnold had become very angry with many Americans, and was also deeply in debt; and, in an evil hour, he resolved to desert his countrymen, do them all the harm he could, and join the British army. For this purpose he obtained the command of the strong post of West Point, in the Hudson Highlands. This he agreed to give up to the British for fifty thousand dollars and the office of General in the British army.



BENEDICT ARNOLD.

22. Sir Henry Clinton employed Major André, a smart young man, to bargain with Arnold. Late in September, 1780, while Washington was in Connecticut having a talk with the French officers, André went up the Hudson in the British sloop-of-war *Vulture*, and on the shore near Haverstraw he met Arnold. When they had arranged all their plans, and André was about to return, the *Vulture* had disappeared. Some Americans on shore had fired cannon-balls upon the vessel, and it had moved down the river some distance to avoid them.

23. André was now compelled to cross the river above, and go

QUESTIONS.—19. What did Clinton do? What occurred at Springfield? 20. What made the Americans rejoice? How did the British feel? 21. What can you tell about General Arnold? 22. What can you tell about Major André?

---

Escape of Arnold.

## Death of André.

The captors.

---

to New York on horseback, down the east side of the Hudson. He was in disguise, and went on well until he had arrived at Tarrytown, where three young men stopped him. When they discovered that he was a British officer, they searched him, and in his boots they found papers which showed all the wicked intentions of Arnold.

24. Arnold, at his house in the Highlands, heard of the arrest of André, and, kissing his wife and babe, left in haste, fled down the river in a boat, to the *Vulture*, and escaped. Major André was tried, condemned, and hanged as a spy, a few days afterward, though every body pitied him. If the Americans could have caught Arnold, they would have hanged him, and let André go.

25. The names of the young men who arrested André were John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Wart. Every body felt thankful to them for thus preventing the terrible mischief Arnold tried to do; and the Congress voted them each a silver medal, and two hundred dollars a year as long as they lived. We may admire Benedict Arnold the *soldier*, but we must ever despise Benedict Arnold **THE TRAITOR**.

26. And now another year of the war drew to a close. The Patriots were still firm and hopeful. Great Britain had lost much blood and money in attempts to make slaves of the Americans, but to little purpose. Yet the king and Parliament went blindly and wickedly on. They declared war against Holland, and made great preparations for fighting the Americans the next year. We shall soon see how it turned out.

**QUESTIONS.**—23. What can you tell about the capture of André? 24. What can you tell of the escape of Arnold and death of André? 25. What can you tell about the captors of André? 26. What can you say about the British troops and Government?



CAPTOR'S MEDAL.

## SECTION VIII.

SEVENTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1781.]

1. The noble character of the American soldiers was shown at the beginning of 1781. They had suffered every want. The Continental money, in which they had been paid, was worthless; and Congress was not prompt in paying them any thing. They had asked for relief in vain. Finally, more than a thousand of them left Morristown, on the 1st of January, and started for Philadelphia, to compel Congress to do something for them.

2. General Wayne went after them. He first tried to coax them to go back. Then he threatened them, and pointed his pistol at the leader. They were firm, and said: "We love and respect you, but if you fire, you are a dead man. We are not going to the enemy; on the contrary, if they were now to come out, you should see us fight under your orders with as much alacrity as ever."

3. Their patriotism was fairly tried. At Princeton, some men sent by Sir Henry Clinton, tried to hire them to join the British army. They were indignant, and handed these men over to General Wayne, to be punished. Congress, at this time, satisfied them, and they returned to duty. When they were offered a reward for giving up the British spies to Wayne, they nobly refused it, saying, "Our necessities compelled us to demand justice from our government; we ask no reward for doing our duty to our country against its enemies!"

4. Other signs of discontent in the army, at this time, made Congress more active in providing money for the use of the troops. Taxes were imposed and cheerfully paid. An agent was sent to Europe to borrow money; and a national bank was established in Philadelphia, under the management of Robert Morris, which

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about American soldiers? 2. What can you tell of General Wayne and the soldiers? 3. What noble thing did the soldiers do? 4. What did Congress do?

---

Arnold in Virginia.

Anecdote.

General Greene in the South.

---

did good service in furnishing money to buy necessities for the army. Mr. Morris also used his private fortune for the purpose, very freely.

5. While the American soldiers were showing their patriotism in the midst of sufferings, Arnold the traitor was in lower Virginia with many British and Tory troops, injuring his countrymen as much as he could. He burned a great deal of public and private property at Richmond, and plundered in other places. After doing as much mischief as he could, from January to April, Arnold returned to New York. The Americans tried hard to catch the traitor; and La Fayette went to Virginia with troops for that purpose. But Arnold was very cautious, for he knew his neck was in danger.

6. On one occasion Arnold had a Virginian as a prisoner. "What would the Americans do with me if they should catch me?" he asked the Virginian. The prisoner boldly and promptly replied, "They would bury your leg that was wounded at Quebec, with military honors, and hang the rest of you." Arnold asked him no more questions. *X*

7. Let us now look toward the Carolinas, where most of the

*yo*  
  
*yo*  
fighting was done during the campaign of 1781. General Greene, the great soldier from Rhode Island, went there in the autumn of 1780, and took command of the little southern army then gathering. A part of it he sent to Cheraw, eastward of the Pedee river. The remainder, about a thousand strong, under General Morgan, were encamped near the junction of the Pacolet and Broad rivers.

Cornwallis and his army were between the two.

8. Cornwallis was just preparing to march into North Carolina again. Unwilling to leave Morgan in his rear, he sent Colonel

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell of Arnold in Virginia? 6. What can you tell about one of his prisoners? 7. What can you tell about Greene at the South?

GENERAL GREENE.

---

Battle at the Cowpens.Retreat of Greene, and pursuit of Cornwallis.

---

Tarleton, a fiery British horseman, to capture or scatter the Americans. At a place among the mountains, called the Cowpens, Tarleton and his men, and Morgan and his brave followers, had a severe battle for two hours. The British were beaten and scattered, and many of them were made prisoners.

9. At the close of the battle, Morgan started for Virginia with his prisoners. Cornwallis heard of it, and marched forward in haste to head off Morgan. He was a little too late; Morgan had crossed the Catawba before Cornwallis arrived. Feeling sure of him, as he did of Washington at Trenton, you remember [verse 4, page 134], Cornwallis waited till morning. A heavy rain during the night filled the river to the brim, and the British could not cross until Morgan had joined Greene on the Yadkin.



GENERAL MORGAN.

10. Now a wonderful flight and pursuit commenced, which extended from the Yadkin to the Dan. Greene and his army were pursued by Cornwallis and his troops full two hundred miles. Three times the rivers were filled by rains after the Americans had crossed, and kept the British back; and in this the Patriots saw the hand of a kind Providence. Greene and his army finally crossed the Dan into Virginia, and Cornwallis, tired of the chase, marched slowly back into the interior of North Carolina. 



COLONEL HENRY LEE.

11. Greene remained in Virginia only long enough to allow his troops to rest, when he crossed the Dan to prevent Cornwallis gathering the Tories in North Carolina. He sent forward Colonel Henry Lee, one of the best officers

QUESTIONS.—8. What can you tell about Cornwallis and the battle at the Cowpens? 9. What can you tell about Cornwallis and Morgan? 10. What can you tell of a retreat and pursuit? 11. What did Greene then do?

in the army, who scattered the Loyalists or Tories, and made all afraid.

12. Greene now felt strong, and determined to attack Cornwallis. On the 15th of March, 1781, the two armies met near Guilford Court-house, and fought one of the hardest battles of the Revolution. Both suffered dreadfully in killed and wounded. The Americans lost four hundred; and the British full six hundred. There was no victory for either. Cornwallis had rather the worst of it, and hurried off, with his shattered army, to Wilmington, while Greene prepared to enter South Carolina, and attack the British, under Rawdon, at Camden.

13. Greene encamped upon a hill, within a mile of Rawdon's troops at Camden, on the 19th of April. A week afterward the British fell upon him suddenly, and a very sharp battle occurred. Each party lost about the same number of men, killed and wounded. Colonel Washington, a brave soldier in the southern army, took fifty of the British prisoners, and with these, and all his cannons, Greene retreated a few miles and encamped.

14. The two armies were now about equal in strength, and Lord Rawdon became alarmed. So he set fire to Camden, and fled down the country to Nelson's Ferry, on the Santee river. This was early in May. Within a week afterward the Americans took possession of four important British posts, and Greene, with his whole army, was marching toward the stronger station of

Fort Ninety-Six, between the Saluda  
and Savannah rivers.

15. It was toward the close of May when Greene commenced his attack on Ninety-Six, and he continued it for a month, when he heard of the approach of Rawdon with a strong army. In the mean while, Lee, Pickens, and others, had attacked the British and Tories at Augusta. They took posses-



GENERAL PICKENS.

QUESTIONS.—12. What can you tell about a battle at Guilford? 13. What can you tell about a battle near Camden? 14. What did Rawdon do? What did the Americans do? 15. What can you tell about an attack on Ninety-Six and Augusta?

---

Position of the two armies.      Battle of Eutaw Springs.      Losses of the British.

---

sion of that place on the 5th of June, and then hastened to help Greene. Ninety-Six held out, and before the arrival of Rawdon, the Americans all fled beyond the Saluda. +

16. Soon after this, Rawdon marched back toward Orangeburg, and Greene became his pursuer. Then crossing the Congaree, the Patriot army marched to the High Hills of Santee, below Camden, and there encamped during a portion of the hot and sickly season. Leaving his troops at Orangeburg, in command of Colonel Stewart, who had come up from Charleston, Rawdon went to that city and embarked for England.

17. In August, many North Carolina troops joined Greene upon the High Hills of Santee; and at the close of that month, the entire Patriot army crossed the Congaree and marched toward Orangeburg. The British fled down the Santee and encamped at Eutaw Springs. There they were attacked by Greene on the 8th of September, and a very severe battle of four hours occurred.

18. Although at the end of the conflict, the British held the field at Eutaw, the battle was really favorable to the Americans. That night the British fled toward Charleston. They had lost about seven hundred men, and the Americans about five hundred and fifty. Both parties claimed the victory. It belonged to neither on the battle-day, but it remained with the Patriots.

19. At this time, Marion, Suinter, Lee, and others, were driving small parties of the British and Tories from place to place, and compelled them finally to abandon the country entirely. They fled into Charleston, pursued all the way by the Americans. At the close of 1781, the British had lost every place at the South except Charleston and Savannah, and to these two cities they were confined.

20. Of all these Southern leaders of small bands, Marion was the greatest. He was bold and cautious, and was seldom unsuccessful. For some time his camp was upon an island at the

QUESTIONS.—16. What can you tell about the movements of the armies? 17. What took place in August and September? 18. What can you say about the battle at Eutaw Springs? 19. What was being done to the British in South Carolina? 20. What can you tell about Marion?



GENERAL MARION.

junction of the Pedee and Lynch's creek, amid the tall cypress-trees from which hung the long moss, like banners.

21. To that camp a young British officer, sent to have a talk with Marion, was taken, with his eyes covered. When about to depart, Marion invited him to remain to dinner. To his astonishment, all that was offered were a few roasted potatoes, served upon pieces of bark, with a log for a table. Marion assured the young man that this was rather better fare than he and his soldiers were accustomed to. The young officer went back to his camp, and declared that such a people could not be, and ought not to be, conquered. He was right.

22. While these things were going on in South Carolina, important events were in progress in Virginia. Cornwallis marched from Wilmington, and at the close of May, was at Petersburg, in Virginia, with quite a strong army. La Fayette was then in that State, but his troops were too few to do much against Cornwallis, and that whole region appeared doomed to British rule.

23. Cornwallis felt strong, and he marched to Richmond and beyond, to fight La Fayette. But that brave officer was cautious, and kept out of the way of the British until he was stronger. So Cornwallis, after destroying much property, marched slowly down the James river, followed by the Americans under La Fayette, Wayne, and Steuben. Steuben was a great soldier from Prussia, and taught the American soldiers many useful things in the art of war.



GENERAL STEUBEN.

QUESTIONS.—21. What story can you tell of Marion and a British officer? 22. What was occurring in Virginia? 23. What can you tell about Cornwallis in Virginia?

---

The British at Yorktown.

The Allied Armies.

Arnold in New England.

---

24. Cornwallis finally went to Portsmouth, near Norfolk. But Sir Henry Clinton, fearing Washington might attack New York, wished Cornwallis nearer the sea, so that he might come and help him, if necessary. All the British in Virginia then went to Yorktown, on the York river, and there they built strong embankments for cannons, around their camp.

25. Early in July, the French army under Rochambeau, came from New England, where they had been almost a year doing nothing, and joined Washington on the Hudson river, in Westchester county. Then Washington resolved to attack the British in New York. But when he heard that a large number of troops had come from England and joined Clinton, and that De Grasse, a great French war-sailor in the West Indies, could not come and help him, he gave it up, and prepared to march to Virginia to drive Cornwallis from that State.

26. Washington managed so to deceive Clinton that the British in New York had no idea that the Americans and French were going to Virginia, until they were some distance on their way. It was then too late to pursue them, so Clinton sent Arnold, the traitor, to desolate the New England coasts. He hoped this would cause Washington to return for their defense.

27. Arnold went willingly, and burned New London, almost in sight of his own birth-place at Norwich. And at Fort Griswold, opposite, he allowed a dreadful massacre of American soldiers, for which there was no excuse. But these cruelties did not check the march of the Allied Armies, as the French and Americans were called.

28. The Allied Armies, twelve thousand strong, arrived at Yorktown on the 28th of September, 1781. Already De Grasse



COUNT DE ROCHAMBEAU.

QUESTIONS.—24. What did Clinton wish? What did the British do? 25. What can you say about the French army? What did Washington do? 26. How was Clinton deceived? and what did he do? 27. What did Arnold do?

---

Siege of Yorktown.

## Capture of Cornwallis.

## Rejoicing.

had arrived with his ships, and had battled with British vessels, under Admiral Graves, near the entrance to the Chesapeake Bay. Now the French ships were nearer Yorktown, ready to aid the armies.

29. For many days the Allied troops prepared for a general attack upon the British. Then they fired heavy cannon balls upon every part of their camp, and red-hot shot among the British ships, which set them on fire. Cornwallis saw that all was lost, and tried to escape one night, but could not. Finally, on the 19th of October, he and all his army, almost seven thousand in number, became prisoners to the Americans and French. Clinton, who had just arrived with as many more troops, returned to New York, amazed and disheartened.

30. This was a grand victory. This was the blow that smote to earth all British power in America. The king and Parliament were amazed, and trembled. The Patriots all over this land rejoiced as they had never done before. From churches, legislative halls, from the army and from Congress, went up a shout of thanksgiving to the Lord God Omnipotent, for the success of the Allied troops.

31. The news reached Philadelphia at midnight. The watchmen called out, "Twelve o'clock, and Cornwallis is taken!" Soon lights were seen moving in all houses, and in a few minutes the streets were filled with the excited people. The next morning, the Secretary of Congress read a letter from Washington to that body, telling of the victory. Then the members all went together to a temple of the living God, and there joined in thanksgiving to the King of kings for the triumph. Yet the war was not quite ended.

QUESTIONS.—28. What preparations for battle were made? 29. What can you tell about the siege of Yorktown and capture of Cornwallis? 30. What was the effect of these? 31. What occurred in Philadelphia?

---

The American army in the South.

End of the war.

Treaty for peace.

---

## SECTION IX.

### CLOSING EVENTS OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1782-1789.]

1. General Greene heard of the capture of Cornwallis, at the close of October, and there was great joy in his army. The Patriots of the South now felt certain of independence and peace; and Governor Rutledge called a Legislature together. Yet it was necessary to be on the look-out, for there was quite a large British army yet in Charleston, and Tories were plentiful everywhere.

2. Marion kept watch near Charleston; Greene and his army lay upon the banks of the Edisto river; Wayne, always wide awake, kept the British in Georgia close within Savannah; St. Clair, marching down from Yorktown, frightened the British at Wilmington, and made them flee to Charleston; and Washington kept Sir Henry Clinton and his army close prisoners in the city of New York.

3. The king and Parliament now gave up the American colonies as lost to them forever, and sent word to all the British commanders to stop fighting, and prepare to leave the country. This was in the spring of 1782. On the 11th of July the British left Savannah, and on the 14th of December following they departed from Charleston also. But they remained in New York almost a year longer, until every thing was settled. They finally left on the 25th of November, 1783. This is called "Evacuation Day," in New York.

4. Men, called Commissioners, were appointed by the Americans and the British, to make a bargain, or treaty for peace, between the two. This was completed at Paris, on the 3d of September, 1783, when the king of Great Britain had acknowledged

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you say about the army and people at the South? 2. What were the American officers in the South doing? 3. What did the king and Parliament do? 4. What did the British in America do? 5. What can you tell about a treaty?

the independence of the United States. Then these States became a new nation upon the earth.

5. The remnants of the American army were then at West



GENERAL KNOX.

Point and neighborhood. These were marched down the Hudson river; and on the morning when the British were to leave New York, they entered the city, under the command of General Knox, accompanied by George Clinton, the Governor of the State of New York. Then they had the pleasure of seeing their enemies leave our shores forever.

6. A few days after this, Washington bade his officers an affectionate farewell, and then went to Annapolis, in Maryland, where Congress was sitting, and gave up his commission as commander-in-chief of the armies, to the President of that body. From Annapolis he hastened to his home at Mount Vernon (where he had been but once during the whole war), hoping to live there in repose the remainder of his life.

7. Although the war was ended, and peace and independence were secured, there was much to be done to make things prosperous. The Americans had become deeply in debt on account of the war; and they soon found that the *Articles of Confederation*, of which I have told you [page 134], would not answer as the great and enduring laws of the Government.

8. Many of the best men in the country talked these things over a great deal. Washington was very anxious about it, for he saw that unless something was done very soon, much trouble would come. Finally, several of the leading men in different States, met in Philadelphia, in May, 1787. After thinking and talking for many weeks, they wrote out, and agreed to that great bargain of the whole people of the United States, called THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION.

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell about the Americans taking possession of New York? 6. What did Washington do? 7. What was to be done after the war? 8. What can you tell about a meeting of leading men? What did they make?

---

The constitutional convention.Franklin in the convention.

---

9. That Convention, or Congress, did a great work, and some of the wisest and best men in the world were there. Washington was the President; and the venerable Dr. Franklin, then past eighty-one years of age, was also there. For several days at



FRANKLIN, IN THE FEDERAL CONVENTION.

the beginning, they could not agree, and things went on badly. Then Franklin arose, and proposed that the Convention should be opened every morning with prayer to Almighty God for guidance. It was done, and from that time all went on well. +

10. The Constitution was finally agreed to by the people of all

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you tell about the Federal Convention? What did Dr. Franklin do?

---

Close of the history of the strife for freedom.

---

the States. On the 4th of March, 1789, the old Continental Congress ended, and the Federal Constitution became the Great Law of the Republic. That was the final act of the Revolution. That was the closing work of the GREAT PATRIOTS. Then the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA commenced their glorious career.

11. And now the story of the STRIFE FOR FREEDOM, or THE REVOLUTION, is ended. I am sure, my Young Friend, you have been interested; and I am also persuaded that you will always love those great and good men who did and suffered so much during the War for Independence, and will do all you can to preserve the blessed UNION which is bound together by that old and sacred bargain—THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION.

QUESTION.—10. What can you say about the Federal Constitution? What is the conclusion of the matter?

# CHAPTER VI.

## SECTION I.

### THE CONFEDERATION, OR UNION OF STATES.

---

Washington elected president of the United States.

---

1. WHEN most of the people of the United States had agreed to the Federal Constitution which bound them all together, they prepared to choose a great governor or president, who should be the chief man of the nation. They all turned toward Washington, who had so nobly led their armies through the War for Independence. He was honored and beloved by everybody. So the people, as if with one voice, chose him to be their chief ruler, or the President of the United States. John Adams, another great Patriot, was chosen Vice-President, or the second man in the nation.

2. The new government was to be arranged at New York. Washington left his quiet home at Mount Vernon, on the Potomac, and traveled to that city. Everywhere the people met him and expressed their love; and at New York he was received by a great crowd of

QUESTION.—1. What can you tell about the choice of a President of the United States?



WASHINGTON AND HIS RESIDENCE.

Inauguration of Washington.Arrangement of public officers.

soldiers and citizens. On the 30th of April, 1789, he was inaugurated the first President of the United States—that is, he laid his hand upon the Bible and solemnly promised, in the presence of thousands of people, to do all in his power to be a good and faithful governor. That took place on the balcony of the old Federal Hall in Wall-street. Then commenced

### THE ADMINISTRATION OF WASHINGTON. [1789-1797.]

3. The Federal Congress met at the same time. It was made up of Representatives from the confederated States. These were of two kinds. One kind, chosen by the people for two years, were called *Representatives*. The other kind, chosen by the several Legislatures for six years, were called *Senators*.

4. The Senate and House of Representatives met in separate rooms. According to the Constitution, any decree made by one body could not become a law unless it was agreed to by the other body, and was signed by the President. It was also directed that the Congress should meet every year. So each Congress (chosen for two years), has two *sessions*, as their remaining together is called.

5. Men were also appointed to assist the President in the management of the affairs of government. One was to do all the talking and writing, necessary to keep up a good understanding with other governments. He was called Secretary of State. Another was appointed to take charge of all matters connected with the army. He was named Secretary of War. And the Secretary of the Treasury was chosen to take care of all money affairs. Then an Attorney-General was appointed as the President's lawyer. These different persons composed the President's Cabinet, and were to be his advisers, the same as the British ministers are the king's advisers.

6. When this matter was settled, the Congress, and Washington and his Cabinet worked hard to carry out other plans of

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you tell about Washington and his inauguration? 3. What can you tell about Congress? 4. What can you tell about the Senate and Representatives? and the meetings of Congress? 5. What can you tell about the President's Cabinet?

## Formation of the government.

## The North-Western Territory.

government. They took measures to tax the people for every thing they received in ships, so as to get money to pay the government expenses. This required a great deal of care. Fortunately Alexander Hamilton, one of the greatest men in the country, had been chosen the President's helper and adviser in money matters, and he soon arranged an excellent *Revenue System*, as it was called.

7. Next they planned a method for having the laws properly carried out. They appointed five judges, in different parts of the United States, with a chief judge to preside. These formed the Supreme Court; and what they should decree was to be considered law, without another word from any body. This was called the *National Judiciary*.

8. Among other things, Mr. Hamilton recommended the establishment of a National Bank. This was done in 1794. Two years earlier, a mint was started, where gold and silver and copper coins were made. And so, after about three years, the *Executive Departments*, the *Revenue System*, and the *Judiciary*, were arranged, and the government of the United States, very much as it is now, was put in motion.

9. Immediately after the Revolution, settlers began to go, in great numbers, into the wild country north of the Ohio river. In 1787, the region now covered by the States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin, was put under a governor, and called *The North-Western Territory*. Four years afterward, a new State was added to the old thirteen, by the admission of Vermont.

10. The British yet kept some forts in the north-west. Although peace was agreed to, they continually advised the Indians to fight the Americans; and finally, in 1790, they commenced a



ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

QUESTIONS.—6. What can you tell of the labors of Washington and others? and of the Revenue System? 7. What can you tell about the National Judiciary? 8. What else was done? 9. What can you tell about the Ohio country? 10. What did the British do?

---

Federalists and Republicans. Troubles with the French. Whisky insurrection.

---

war upon the white people in the Ohio country, which continued three or four years.

11. At last General Wayne, who you remember, [page 148], took Stony Point away from the British, was sent there with an army. He beat the Indians here and there, until they were glad to make peace, and agree to behave themselves. They continued quiet for more than a dozen years after that.

12. The leaders in public affairs did not always agree, and at last two parties were formed. Those who were favorable to giving great power to the government, were called *Federalists*, and those who wished to give more power to the people, were called *Republicans*. The chief leader of the Republicans was Thomas Jefferson, who wrote the Declaration of Independence.

13. At this time the people of France, having become tired of a monarch, had cut off the heads of their king and queen and many other great people. They were resolved to be free, and have a president, as the United States had. But they did not know how to manage such affairs, and a bloody time they had. They sent an agent here, named Genet, to persuade our government to help them, as the French had helped the Americans in the late war.

X 14. The Republicans wished to aid the French, but the Federalists, with Washington and Hamilton at their head, were unwilling to have any thing to do with European affairs. This matter gave the President much trouble. Genet became very impertinent, and, finally, Washington asked the French government to call him home. It was done, and another was sent, who behaved much better.

15. This trouble was just passing away, when another appeared. Congress had put a tax upon whisky made in this country. The numerous whisky-makers in western Pennsylvania, declared they would not pay the tax; and arming themselves, they treated the collectors of the money very badly. The President was compelled to send soldiers there in 1795, to make them behave,

QUESTIONS.—11. What can you tell of an Indian war? 12. What can you tell about two parties? 13. What can you tell about France and a French agent sent here? 14. What trouble occurred, and how did it happen?

and matters soon became quiet. This is known as *The Whisky Insurrection*.

16. Bad feeling was now growing up again between the Americans and the British. The British refused to act fairly according to the great bargain or treaty, made at the close of the war, of which I have told you on page 167. Not wishing to have another quarrel, the President sent John Jay, an excellent Patriot, to talk the matter over. He did so, and made a new arrangement, which many Americans did not like. They quarreled a great deal about *Jay's Treaty*, but finally they let the matter drop.

17. And now another trouble appeared. It seemed as if the United States would never be without some difficulty. Their merchants were sending ships to trade in the Mediterranean sea, where there were a great many sea-robbers, who came from Algiers, in northern Africa. They seized and plundered many American ships, and the merchants began to be afraid to send their vessels there.

18. Congress concluded to put a stop to this, and ordered some war-ships to be built and sent there to protect the merchant vessels. This was the beginning of the American navy; and another cabinet officer, to assist the President, was appointed, called the Secretary of the Navy. But the United States could not stop these sea-robbers, called pirates, from plundering, until it was agreed to pay them so much money every year.

19. Washington was twice elected President, which made his term, or administration, eight years. He and his associates had done a world of work within that time, and every thing was going on smoothly. In the autumn of 1796, the people came

QUESTIONS.—16. What caused bad feeling between the Americans and the British? What was done? 17. What can you tell about trouble in the Mediterranean sea? 18. What can you tell about the beginning of the navy, and money paid to the sea-robbers? 19. What can you tell about Washington, and a new election?



JOHN JAY.

---

Death of Washington.

Adams's administration.

together in different places, all over the country, to choose a new President. The Federalists and the Republicans had a hard contest. The Federalists beat, and chose John Adams for President. Thomas Jefferson, the Republican, was chosen Vice-President.

20. In September, 1796, Washington sent forth to the people a noble Farewell Address; and, on the 4th of March following, he retired to Mount Vernon, where he lived in repose until the 14th of December, 1799, when he died. Then there was mourning in America and in Europe, for a great and good man—a champion of liberty, and a friend of mankind, had left the earth forever.



ADAMS, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

## SECTION II.

ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.

[1797-1801.]

1. John Adams, the second President of the United States, was very active in Congress and in Europe, during the whole War for Independence. He found trouble to begin with when he became President. France and England were at war; and because of Jay's Treaty with Great Britain, and because the American government would not help the French in their Revolution, the rulers of France were very angry with us.

2. Adams soon called the Congress together to talk over the matter. They sent three smart men as ministers to the French

QUESTIONS.—20. What more can you say about Washington? 1. What can you tell about Adams and the beginning of his administration?

---

Bonaparte.

District of Columbia.

President Jefferson.

---

government, to settle all difficulties, but these were insulted, and could do nothing. The French were then ruled by a *Directory*, as the government was called, composed of five men.

3. Soon after that, the great Napoleon Bonaparte, then a young man increasing in power, took the government into his own hands. He was courteous and wise, and it was not long before every difficulty was settled, and the danger of a war with France passed away.

4. In the year 1790, a tract of land on the Potomac, ten miles square, and called the District of Columbia, was given to the United States, and there the city of Washington was laid out the next year. A building called the Capitol, for Congress to meet in, was commenced. In the year 1800 that city was made the federal capital, and President Adams went there to reside.

5. In the autumn of 1800, the people elected another President. Then, again, the Federalists and Republicans had great strife. This time the Republicans were the victors. Thomas Jefferson was elected President, and Aaron Burr Vice-President, not by the people, but by the House of Representatives. When you are older you may better understand how this happened.

---

### SECTION III.



JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION. [1801-1809.]

1. Thomas Jefferson, the third President of the United States, was also active during the whole War for Independence, in Congress, and as Governor of Virginia. He, too, was an agent for his country in Europe, but not until after the war.

2. Like Washington, Mr. Jefferson held the office of President eight years. He was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1801.

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you tell about trouble with France? 3. What can you tell about Bonaparte? 4. What can you tell about the federal city and capitol? 5. What can you tell about an election in 1800? 1. What can you tell about Jefferson?

Ohio and Louisiana.

The war with Tripoli.



JEFFERSON AND HIS RESIDENCE.

Then Tripoli, one of the robber-governments, declared war against the United States. Jefferson at once sent strong ships there to protect our merchant vessels, and soon there was fighting.

5. One day the United States frigate *Philadelphia*, commanded by Captain Bainbridge, a brave war-sailor, struck on a rock in the harbor of Tripoli. Bainbridge and his officers were made prisoners, while his men were all made slaves, and suffered dreadfully.

6. Early in 1804, Lieutenant Decatur, who was afterward one of the best men in the navy, sailed into the harbor of Tripoli with a small vessel, on a dark night, drove the Tripolitans from

He turned a great many Federalists out of office, and put his Republican friends in; and he began many and great changes in the management of public affairs.

3. In the autumn of 1802, Ohio became a State of the Union. The next year, a vast region west of the Mississippi river, called Louisiana, was purchased of the French for fifteen millions of dollars. This was divided. The southern portion was called the *Territory of New Orleans*; the northern part was called the *District of Louisiana*.

4. The sea-robbers in the Mediterranean, of whom I have told you [page 175], were yet giving the merchants and traders a great deal of trouble, and the United States Government resolved not to pay any more money every year to them.

QUESTIONS.—2. What did Jefferson do? 3. What can you tell about Ohio and Louisiana? 4. What can you tell about a war with Tripoli? 5. What happened to an American ship, and her officers and crew? 6. What can you tell of the brave Decatur?

## Bravery of Decatur.

## Hamilton and Burr.

## Burr's scheme.

the *Philadelphia*, set the vessel on fire, and escaped without losing a man. This bold act alarmed the Bashaw, or governor of Tripoli.

7. The Bashaw was a bad man. His place belonged to his brother Hamet, whom he had compelled to flee to Egypt. Hamet readily joined the Americans against his wicked brother, and at the head of a number of Mohammedan soldiers, he accompanied some seamen, under Captain Eaton, across the deserts from Alexandria in Egypt. They captured a Tripolitan town on the Mediterranean, and were marching directly for Tripoli, when the terrified Bashaw made peace with the American agent there. So the war was ended.



8. In the summer of 1804, Aaron Burr and Alexander Hamilton had a duel, or fight with pistols. Hamilton was killed, and after that Burr was generally detested. He had a great desire to be a leading man; so, in the spring of 1806, he went beyond the Alleghany mountains, where an enterprising and restless people were fast gathering, and took measures to raise a large number of troops, to go, as he pretended, and seize the Spanish territory of Texas and the neighboring States.

9. Many good and brave men joined Burr in this, because, on account of the conduct of the Spaniards, they thought it right. But he was finally suspected of an intention to divide the Union, make a separate government of the Western States, and become its President. He was arrested, and tried in 1807; but it could not be proved that he had any such intentions, and they let him go.

QUESTIONS.—7. What more can you tell about the war with Tripoli? 8. What can you tell about Aaron Burr? 9. What can you tell of his scheme, and its end?

Fulton and navigation by steam.

Trouble in Europe and America.

10. This same year a most important thing occurred. Robert Fulton, an American portrait painter, and a good mechanic, who had invented machinery for driving boats by steam, placed some in a vessel on the Hudson river.

The boat went from New York to Albany in thirty-

six hours, "against wind and tide," to the great astonishment of every body.

This was the commencement of successful steamboat navigation in the world.



FULTON'S STEAMBOAT.

ROBERT FULTON.

11. And now there was great trouble in Europe. There was war almost everywhere. Bonaparte had made himself Emperor of France, and three of his brothers kings of other countries. All Europe was in arms against him, and Great Britain, too. The United States would have nothing to do with either party; and so, for a long time, our merchant-vessels were allowed to trade in all parts, and make much money.

12. A change came. England and France, in their endeavors to injure each other, closed many ports, and both parties seized

American vessels. Our commerce was very soon ruined, for we had few large ships to protect it. Congress had ordered swarms of gun-boats, but these were hardly sufficient for a coast-guard.



A FELUCCA GUN-BOAT.

13. These things caused bitter feelings toward Great Britain, which was increased by the commanders of British vessels claiming the right to go on board of American ships, and search for their runaway sailors. This claim became the chief cause of war between the United States and Great Britain.

QUESTIONS.—10. What can you tell of Fulton and steamboats? 11. What can you tell of troubles in Europe? How did the Americans act? 12. What change came? and what was done? 13. What was the effect?

---

The *Leopard* and *Chesapeake*.

## The embargo act.

14. One pleasant day in June, 1807, the British ship *Leopard* attacked the American ship *Chesapeake*, off the coast of Virginia, because her commander would not allow his vessel to be searched for runaway sailors. The *Chesapeake* was badly beaten, and was compelled to go into port at Old Point Comfort, near Hampton.

15. This wicked act made the Americans very angry. President Jefferson issued a decree, that every British vessel should immediately leave America, and not be allowed to return until satisfaction was given by the king and Parliament, for the outrage.

16. In the mean while, England and France did all they could to injure each other, while the British would not give up what they called their rights—that was, full liberty to search American vessels for runaways. Finally, when the Congress met in December, a law was made, forbidding all vessels, of every kind, leaving the American shores, and ordering all American sailors abroad to come home immediately, and prepare for expected war. This was called *The Embargo Act*.

17. Merchants, and all others connected with ships, very much disliked the Embargo, for it ruined their business. Nor did it seem to do much good, for the English and French went right on, as before, and paid very little attention to what the Americans said or did. So, early in the spring of 1809, the Embargo law was done away with, and another was made, forbidding all trade with Great Britain or France until they should act more justly.

18. Mr. Jefferson had now been President eight years, and his place was filled by James Madison, a great Patriot of Virginia, who was also a Republican,

QUESTIONS.—14. What can you tell of an attack on an American ship? 15. What was then done? 16. What did the English, French, and American Governments do? 17. What more can you tell about the Embargo? 18. What can you tell of a new election?

President Madison.

Beginning of his administration.

King George.

## SECTION IV.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION. [1809-1817.]



MADISON AND HIS RESIDENCE.

1. James Madison, the fourth President of the United States, was also active in the Revolution. Though a very young man, he was a member of the Continental Congress, and was one of the warmest friends of the Federal Constitution.

2. Mr. Madison became President on the 4th of March, 1809. He chose wise men for his cabinet, or his advisers. On account of the continued troubles with Great Britain and France, he called the Congress together a few weeks afterward, to talk over these matters.

3. King George, who was the same man that ruled Great Britain when the Revolution commenced, almost forty years before, was disposed to be just toward the Americans, I think, but he had bad advisers, and he was sometimes

crazy, and did not know what he did. He sent a man over here to settle all difficulties, and things would have gone on smoothly had not his advisers prevented the king from approving of what his agent had done. For awhile the Americans believed things were going on well again, and they commenced trading with Great Britain, as before.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you say about Madison? 2. What did Madison do? 3. What can you say about King George and his advisers?

---

Conduct of France and England.      Naval engagement.      War with the Indians.

---

4. But France and England continued to act very wickedly toward the Americans. They allowed their war-ships to seize and plunder our merchant vessels, and in every way acted as enemies, while they pretended to be friends. Great Britain even sent her war-ships to our coasts, to seize American vessels and send them to England as prizes.

5. On one occasion, about the middle of April, 1811, the British ship *Little Belt*, attacked the American ship *President*, off the coast of Virginia. They had a pretty severe fight, when the commander of the British ship concluded it was best to stop, and they separated. This event made a great deal of bad feeling.

6. I have told you how the British, in the West, a long time before, had caused the Indians to attack the Americans. Now they did the same thing again; and in the spring of 1811, Tecumseh, a great Indian warrior, united several of the western tribes in a league, in which they agreed to drive the white people from the country between the Ohio river and the Lakes.

7. General Harrison, who was afterward President of the United States, was then Governor of the Indian Territory. He saw the gathering danger, and caused the people to arm themselves, and prepare for war. In the summer he marched these armed men into the Indian country, and for several months he watched the savages closely. Finally, on a dark night early in November, while he was on the banks of the Tippecanoe river, the Indians fell upon him and his men. They had a very hard fight until morning, when the Indians were driven away. The battle of Tippecanoe was one of the severest ever fought with the Indians.

8. The people of the United States now saw that they must either fight or become slaves, as it were, to Great Britain again. They had become prosperous and happy in peace, and very much disliked going to war. But they could no longer endure the in-

QUESTIONS.—4. What was done? How did France and England continue to act? 5. What can you tell of a fight in Chesapeake Bay? 6. What can you tell about the Indians in the West? 7. What did Harrison do? and what can you tell of a battle? 8. What can you say about the people of the United States? What was done?

---

Campaign of 1813.

The war in the west.

chosen President of the United States. George Clinton, of whom I have told you [verse 5, page 168], had been Vice-President. He died, and Elbridge Gerry, one of the great Patriots of the Revolution, was chosen in his place.

---

## SECTION V.

THE SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1813.]

1. The campaign of 1813 opened with the year. The army was divided. The army of the *West* was under General Harrison, at the head of Lake Erie. The army of the *Center* was under General Dearborn on the Niagara river; and the army of the *North* was under General Hampton on the borders of Lake Champlain. Sir George Prevost took Brock's place as commander of the British army in Canada.

2. War began in the *West*.<sup>05</sup> Thousands of young men came from Kentucky and other western States, to drive the British from Michigan. These were led by the brave old Governor Shelby, who fought valiantly at the battle of King's Mountain, of which I have told you on page 156.

GENERAL SHELBY. 3. Early in January, General Winchester, with an army of fine young men, marched toward Detroit. Some of them were sent ahead and had some skirmishing. The British general, Proctor, then on the Canada border, crossed over, and attacked Winchester near the river Raisin. After a hard battle, the Americans were compelled to surrender, on promise of being well treated.

4. Do you remember what Montcalm promised Monro at Fort William Henry? and what sad thing happened? Look at verse

QUESTIONS.—18. What can you tell about a new election? 1. What can you tell about the division of the army? 2. What was done in the West? 3. What can you tell of Winchester and a battle?

Indian Massacre.Attack on Fort Meigs.Major Croghan.

35 and 36, page 101. Well, a similar thing occurred now. Proctor, who was not half as honorable as Montcalm, went off, without leaving a guard to protect the American prisoners. The Indians soon turned back, murdered a great many of them, set fire to houses, and kept some of the prisoners, to torture them in the woods. O, how angry the Kentuckians were. After that, when they attacked the British and Indians, they would cry out "Remember the river Raisin!"

5. When General Harrison heard of this massacre, he was at the Maumee rapids. There he built a strong work, and called it Fort Meigs. He remained there with his troops till the 1st of May, when he was attacked by General Proctor with more than two thousand British troops and Indians. The savages were led by Tecumseh, of whom I have told you on page 183.

6. Proctor and his men were driven away, after five days' struggle. Some Americans pursued them, and were themselves taken prisoners. Then Proctor returned; but on the 8th of May he was compelled to fly to the Canada shore.

7. A large number of Americans, under General Clay, remained at Fort Meigs. Toward the close of July, Proctor and Tecumseh, with four thousand men, attacked them. Leaving Tecumseh there, Proctor soon marched swiftly to attack Fort Stephenson, at Lower Sandusky, which was defended by Major Croghan—a brave young man, only twenty-one years of age, having with him only one hundred and fifty men.

8. "Surrender immediately," said Proctor, on his arrival. "Never, while I have a man left," replied Croghan. Then a terrible fight followed. At last the British and Indians, beaten and greatly alarmed, fled in confusion. The shots from a single cannon in the fort, had



MAJOR CROGHAN

**QUESTIONS.—** 4. What wicked thing was done near the river Raisin? 5. What did Harrison do? What happened at Fort Meigs? 6. What can you tell about Proctor? 7. What more can you tell about Proctor and the Indians? 8. What can you tell of the bravery of Croghan?

## Scenes on the Lakes.

## Perry's Victory.

## Battle near the Thames.

killed or wounded one hundred and fifty of them, while Croghan lost only one man killed and seven wounded. Tecumseh and the remainder, fled in terror from Fort Meigs.

9. The two great lakes, Erie and Ontario, now became places of much interest. In the autumn of 1812, the Americans completed a small fleet on Lake Ontario; and in the summer of 1813, another had been prepared on Lake Erie, and placed under the command of the brave young war-sailor, Commodore Perry.



COMMODORE PERRY.

10. The British also had a small fleet on Lake Erie. This and the American fleet met toward the west end of the lake, on the 10th of September, 1813, and had a very hard battle, which lasted a greater part of the day. Toward evening every British vessel had surrendered to Perry, and then he wrote to General Harrison—"We have met the enemy, and they are ours!"

11. Harrison was near the western shore of Lake Erie at this time. On the 17th of September, he was joined by four thousand Kentuckians, under the brave old Shelby, and they proceeded to attack the British at Malden, on the Canada shore, and to take Detroit away from them.

12. The British and Indians fled into the country in western Canada. A part of the American army took possession of Detroit, and the remainder, more than three thousand strong, led by Harrison, Shelby, and others, started in pursuit of the flying enemy.

13. They overtook Proctor and his army on the river Thames, on the 5th of October. There a desperate battle was fought. Tecumseh was killed, and his followers fled in dismay. Almost the whole of Proctor's army were killed or made prisoners, and Proctor himself barely escaped on horseback.

14. Now all that Hull had lost was recovered, and there was

QUESTIONS.—9. What was done on the lakes? 10. What can you tell of Perry and his battle? 11. What can you tell of Harrison and Shelby? 12. What can you tell of a pursuit? 13. What can you tell of a battle near the Thames?

---

Capture of York.

Death of Pike.

Events at Sackett's Harbor.

---

no more war in that region. The people, all over the country, rejoiced. Harrison left Cass with some soldiers, to keep Detroit, and dismissing many of the volunteers, (the young men from Kentucky), he marched with the remainder of his army to Niagara, where they joined the army of the center.

15. In February some British troops had crossed the St. Lawrence on the ice, and destroyed much property at Ogdensburg. General Dearborn now determined to attack the British at Toronto (then called York), in Upper Canada. Toward the close of April, quite a large number of troops, in ships commanded by Commodore Chauncey, went to that place, and made a strong attack upon it. The Americans were commanded by General Pike; the British and Indians by General Sheaffe.

16. The British found the Americans too strong for them, so they fled, after setting fire to the powder in the fort, which blew it all in pieces. General Pike was so badly hurt by some of the flying stones and timbers, that he died on Chauncey's ship soon afterward, with the captured British flag under his head. The American flag soon floated over the ruined fort at York.

17. A month afterward, the same troops, borne by the same ships, attacked the British Fort George, on the Niagara river. The British were compelled to give up the fort. They fled to Burlington Heights, at the western end of Lake Ontario, closely pursued by the Americans.

18. Sir George Prevost, whom I have already mentioned [verse 1, page 186], came to Sackett's Harbor with ships and troops, while Chauncey, with his fleet, was at the other end of Lake Ontario. On the 27th of May, 1813, Prevost landed more than a thousand men. General Brown, a brave soldier, was there, with a few troops, and he called the surrounding inhabitants together as quickly as possible. Prevost soon became alarmed, and fled to his ships in great haste.

19. Now the Americans planned an attack upon Montreal, in

QUESTIONS.—14. What was now gained? What did Harrison do? 15. What can you tell about an attack on York, or Toronto? 16. What can you tell of the fight and other events? 17. What did the Americans do on the western shores of Lake Ontario? 18. What occurred at Sackett's Harbor?

---

Events on the St. Lawrence.

Villages burnt.

Troubles in the South.

---

Canada. Dearborn was taken sick, and General Wilkinson took his place as chief commander. He collected seven thousand troops on the banks of the St. Lawrence, early in November, and went down that river, expecting to be joined for the attack on Montreal, by three thousand troops, under Hampton, from Lake Champlain.

20. The British were wide awake on both sides of the river, and the Americans found it very difficult to pass many places, with their boats. Some of them, under General Brown, landed at Williamsburg, and there, on the 11th of November, the Americans and British had a severe fight. The Americans lost more than three hundred men, and the British about two hundred.

21. When he arrived at St. Regis, Wilkinson found that Hampton would not join him, so he marched his army to French Mills, nine miles in the country, and prepared to spend the winter there. They called the place Fort Covington. ~~X~~

22. While these things were going on, there were some exciting scenes on the Niagara. The Americans burned the Canadian village of Newark. The British were soon revenged. They took Forts George and Niagara away from the Americans, and burned Youngstown, Lewiston, Manchester (now Niagara Falls village), the Tuscarora Indian village, Black Rock, and Buffalo. These places were all burned in December, and thus ended the campaign of 1813 in the North.

23. I have told you that the brave Indian warrior, Tecumseh, was killed in battle, in October, 1813. In the spring of that year, he was among the fierce Southern tribes, to arouse them against the white people. The Creeks [see verse 21, page 15] listened to him; and late in August they attacked Fort Mimms, on the Alabama river, and murdered almost three hundred men, women, and children.

24. This terrible massacre made all the white people of the South very angry; and full twenty-five hundred Tennesseeans, under General Jackson (one of the greatest of the American war-

QUESTIONS.—19. What was planned? and what did the Americans do? 20. What can you tell of a battle in Canada? 21. What did Wilkinson do? 22. What can you tell of events on the Niagara frontier? 23. What can you tell of Tecumseh?

---

 The Indians subdued.

Battles on the Ocean.

Death of Lawrence.

riors), marched into the country of the Creeks. They had battle after battle with the Indians, and always beat them. Finally, toward the close of March, 1814, the last battle was fought at the Great Horse Shoe Bend, on the Tallapoosa river. There more than six hundred Indian warriors were slain, and the power of the Creek nation was crushed forever.

25. Now I will tell you what happened on the ocean during 1813. On the 24th of February, the sloop-of-war *Hornet*, commanded by the brave Captain Lawrence, fought and captured the British brig *Peacock*, off the east coast of South America. A few minutes after the *Peacock* gave up, it went to the bottom of the sea.

26. Captain Lawrence was much praised, and when he came home he was made commander of the frigate *Chesapeake*, a larger vessel. In this ship he sailed out of Boston harbor on the 1st of June, 1813, and that afternoon had a hard battle with the British frigate *Shannon*. The brave Captain Lawrence was shot, and as they carried him below to die, he said, "Don't give up the ship!" But they were compelled to give it up, for the *Shannon* was the victor.

27. In August, the British sloop *Pelican* took the American brig *Argus*. A month afterward, Perry gained his great victory on Lake Erie, about which I have told you. A few days before this, the British brig *Boxer* had surrendered to the American brig *Enterprise*, after a fight off the coast of Maine. The commander of each vessel was killed, and they were buried in one grave at Portland.

28. During the summer of 1813, the British admiral, Cockburn, attacked, plundered, and destroyed towns and other property on the Chesapeake Bay and vicinity. In March he destroyed the American shipping in the Delaware, and in May he attacked

QUESTIONS.—24. What can you tell about Jackson and Indian battles? 25. What occurred on the ocean in 1813? 26. What can you tell about Captain Lawrence? 27. What else occurred on the ocean? 28. What can you tell about Admiral Cockburn?



CAPTAIN LAWRENCE.

## Cockburn the marauder.



LAWRENCE CARRIED BELOW.

and burned Havre de Grasse, Georgetown, and Frederictown, on the Chesapeake. Then he went into Hampton Roads, at Old Point Comfort, and proceeded toward Norfolk.

29. The Americans on Craney Island, a little below Norfolk, bravely disputed Cockburn's passage, and drove him back. The British then attacked and plundered Hampton until they were tired, for the American soldiers there were too few to drive them away. Then they went South, plundering the Carolina coast all the way to the Savannah river.

QUESTIONS.—29. What occurred at Craney Island? What more can you tell about Cockburn?

30. During 1813, the American frigate *Essex*, commanded by Captain Porter, made a long cruise in the Atlantic and Pacific oceans, and captured many British whaling vessels. At length, in March, 1814, the *Essex* fought two British vessels at Valparaiso. It was one of the hardest sea-fights during the war. The British were victors; and Porter wrote to the Secretary of the Navy, "We have been unfortunate, but not disgraced."

---

## SECTION VI.

### SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE CONTINUED. [1814, 1815.]

1. It was well for the Americans that Great Britain was at war with Bonaparte all this time, and was prevented sending ships and soldiers across the Atlantic. In March, 1814, Bonaparte was driven out of France, and it was supposed that war would cease. So the British sent fourteen thousand of the great Wellington's troops over to Canada.

2. The American army in northern New York was put in motion at the close of February. It was useless to invade Canada in the St. Lawrence region, so Wilkinson led some of the troops to Plattsburg, on Lake Champlain, and Brown marched with others to Sackett's Harbor.

3. In May, a British fleet and three thousand troops attacked Oswego. After fighting a good deal of the time for two days, they were driven away by the Americans, with a loss of over two hundred men. They did not venture back again.

4. At about this time, General Brown led his troops to the Niagara river. On the morning of the 3d of July, some Americans, under Generals Scott and Ripley, crossed the river and captured Fort Erie. The next day, the American and British armies had a very severe battle at Chippewa. The British were

QUESTIONS.—30. What more can you tell about Captain Porter and his vessel? 1. What was well for the Americans? 2. What did the Americans in northern New York do? 3. What occurred at Oswego? 4. What occurred near the Niagara river?

Events on the Canada frontier.

Battle at Plattsburg.



GENERAL BROWN.

badly beaten, and both armies suffered very much. The British lost about five hundred men, and the Americans three hundred.

5. The British retreated to Burlington Heights, where they were joined by General Drummond. Then they all came back, and attacked Brown and his army at Bridgewater, near Niagara Falls. There, at the close of a hot day, one of the hardest battles of the war com-

menced, and continued until midnight, when each party had lost a little more than eight hundred and fifty men. The Americans were again the victors; and the next day they took post at Fort Erie.

6. On the 15th of August, Drummond, with five thousand men, attacked Fort Erie, but was driven off, after losing almost a thousand of them. He was compelled to flee to Fort George; and finally the Americans destroyed Fort Erie, crossed the river, and went into winter quarters at Buffalo and in its neighborhood.

7. In August, General Prevost, with fourteen thousand men, marched from Canada to drive the Americans from Plattsburg. Each party had a small fleet on Lake Champlain, and these, and the two armies had a very severe battle at Plattsburg, on the 11th of September. The American army was commanded by General Macomb, and the navy by Commodore Macdonough.

8. This was one of the most important battles of the war. The British fleet was beaten; and Prevost, much alarmed, fled, having lost in killed, wounded, and missing, twenty-



COMMODORE MACDONOUGH.

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell about the British army and a battle near Niagara Falls? 6. What else happened on the Niagara frontier? 7. What can you tell of the British and Americans on Lake Champlain? 8. What can you tell of a battle at Plattsburg?

---

Burning of Washington. Defense of Baltimore. The "Star-spangled Banner."

---

five hundred men: The Americans lost only one hundred and twenty-one. This victory caused great rejoicings all over the country.

9. At about the middle of August, General Ross, one of Wellington's bravest officers, came with a large fleet and six thousand soldiers, and landed on the shores of Maryland. With five thousand men he marched toward Washington city, and, at Bladensburg, he had a battle with Americans under General Winder.

10. The Americans were too few to oppose Ross, and on the 24th of August, the British entered Washington, burned the Capitol, the President's house and many private buildings, and came very near making a prisoner of President Madison.

11. Early in September, Ross proceeded with the British fleet and army to capture Baltimore. He landed a few miles from the city, and, while marching to attack it, he was killed in a skirmish. Soon afterward, a severe battle, known as that of North Point, occurred, while the British ships were attacking Fort McHenry, in Baltimore harbor.

12. The Americans behaved with great valor, and so opposed the British, at every move, that they concluded it was useless to make further efforts to capture Baltimore. So they sailed away. This defense was considered a great victory. Have you ever heard the song of *The Star-spangled Banner*? The banner mentioned in it, was the American flag on Fort McHenry at that time. That flag, you know, has a star for every State, and so it is called the "star-spangled banner."

13. During the summer of 1814, British ships continually annoyed the people on the New England coast. Stonington was attacked in August, but the armed inhabitants, after opposing them for four days, finally compelled the British to leave. After this, the war almost ceased at the North.

14. There was yet much trouble and danger in the South. The Indians were pretty quiet, but the Spaniards, who owned Florida, favored the British. The Spanish governor allowed the

QUESTIONS.—9. What occurred in Maryland? 10. What did the British do? 11. What occurred near Baltimore? 12. What can you tell of the defense of Baltimore, and a song? 13. What occurred on the New England coast?

fitting out of a British fleet at Pensacola, to attack the American fort at the entrance to Mobile Bay, and encouraged two hundred Creek warriors to go with them. The attack was made on the 11th of September. The British were driven off, with the loss of one of their vessels and many men.

15. General Jackson, who commanded at the South, told the Spanish governor that he would punish him for helping the enemies of the Americans, if he did not give a good excuse for his conduct. The governor paid no attention to what Jackson said. So the general, early in November, marched his army into Florida, drove the British in Pensacola to their shipping, and made the governor beg for mercy, and give up the fort, town, and every thing else.

16. And now the people of New Orleans were greatly alarmed by the news that a large number of British ships and soldiers were coming to attack the city. They sent in great haste to General Jackson, asking him to come and help them. He arrived there in December, and soon after that, General Packenham, with twelve thousand of Wellington's soldiers, appeared below New Orleans.

17. Jackson was soon prepared for the invaders. First he had skirmishes with the advancing British. Finally, on the 8th of January, 1815, a very severe battle was fought four miles below the city, where Jackson had erected strong works, armed with a few cannons. These works stretched across from the Mississippi river to a deep cypress swamp.

18. Jackson had about six thousand men behind his works, most of them armed with rifles. The British in full force marched up. When they were within rifle shot, the Americans fairly rained a shower of bullets upon them. Packenham was killed, and soon the whole British army fled, leaving seven hundred men dead, and more than a thousand wounded, on the field. The Americans lost only seven killed, and six wounded!

19. The battle at New Orleans was the last one, on land, of

QUESTIONS.—14. What can you tell of events in Florida? 15. What did General Jackson do? 16. What can you tell about New Orleans? 17. What preparations against the British were made? 18. Describe the battle of New Orleans.

Peace.

War with Algiers.

Decatur in the Mediterranean.

the SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. The victory made the Americans rejoice greatly. The American and British governments, through their agents appointed for the purpose, had already made another bargain, or treaty, to become friends.

20. That bargain was completed at Ghent, in Belgium, on the day before Christmas, in 1814; and forty days after the battle at New Orleans, the President of the United States proclaimed PEACE. Then a day was appointed for the whole nation to join in thanksgiving and praise to Almighty God for that blessed event.

21. The contest with Great Britain had just ended, when the Americans were compelled to engage in a short

#### \* \* \* \* \*

W A R W I T H A L G I E R S .

22. I have already told you [page 175], about the sea-robbers in the Mediterranean sea, and how the Bashaw of Tripoli was made to behave himself. The Dey, or Governor of Algiers, having been deceived by the story that the British had destroyed all of the American war-vessels, began to rob their merchant-ships, and was very impertinent to the American agent there..

23. President Madison determined to make the Algerine, also, behave himself, so he sent the brave Decatur to the Mediterranean, with some war-ships, in May, 1815. He fell in with the Algerine fleet, took two of the vessels and many prisoners, and then sailed to Algiers. The governor was astonished. Decatur told him he must let every American go, and pay for all the property his people had robbed the Americans of, or he would destroy his ships and his city. The frightened governor did so, and after that he let the Americans alone.

24. Decatur then made the Bashaws or Governors of Tunis and Tripoli do the same thing, and from that time to this, we have had very little trouble with the Barbary Powers, as they

QUESTIONS.—19. What can you say of the victory at New Orleans? What was done? 20. What can you tell about the treaty for peace? 21. What happened at that time? 22. What can you tell about the sea-robbers in the Mediterranean? 23. What can you tell about an expedition against the Algerines? 24. What else did Decatur do?

Close of Madison's administration.

American manufactures.

were called. In a little while, Decatur did there what all the powers of Europe had not been able to do.

25. And now the stirring administration of Mr. Madison drew to a close. Little else of much importance occurred before its end, except the admission of Indiana into the Union, and giving a new charter to the United States Bank. In the autumn of 1816, James Monroe of Virginia, was elected President, and Daniel D. Tompkins of New York, Vice-President of the United States.

19

## SECTION VII.

### MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION.

[1817-1825.]

1. James Monroe, the fifth President of the United States, was a soldier in the Revolution, and belonged to the Republican party. He chose very wise men for his cabinet, as advisers, and they all went to work industriously to get government matters out of the confusion in which the war had left them.

2. During the war the Americans made cloth and many other things, which before they bought in England and France. They spent a great deal of money for machinery to do it with. When the French and English goods came in abundance after the war,

QUESTIONS.—25. What can you say about the closing of Madison's administration? 1. What can you tell about Monroe and his cabinet? 2. What can you tell about manufactures?



MONROE, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

---

Emigration to the West.

## Indian difficulties.

Jackson in Florida.

---

these manufacturers were much injured, and thousands of people had nothing to do.

3. Like many other things, this, that seemed an evil, was a good. Thousands who were compelled to be idle went beyond the mountains into the fertile West, cultivated the soil, and became healthier, happier, and wealthier than they could have been had they remained in the East.

4. During Mr. Monroe's administration, the Territories of Mississippi, Illinois, Alabama, and Missouri, were admitted into the Union as States. Settlements also increased very rapidly all over the West. General prosperity was everywhere visible, and everybody hoped for long years of repose, when some difficulty appeared in the South.

5. There were bad British subjects in Florida, who were exciting the Indians to injure the Americans. Toward the close of 1817, a large number of Creek and Seminole Indians and runaway negroes, commenced plundering and murdering the settlers on the borders of Georgia and Alabama. Troops were sent to protect the people, but the Indians, becoming aroused, placed all of them in great danger.

6. Hearing of this, General Jackson, with a thousand Tennesseans on horseback, went to the aid of the troops. He caught and hung two white men who had excited the Indians to murder and plunder his countrymen. He then marched to Pensacola, took the town and fort away from the ~~Spaniards~~, and sent the governor and others off to Cuba.

7. Some blamed Jackson for this. Finally, almost every body said he was right, and had treated the governor just as he deserved to be. Not long afterward the United States and Spain made a bargain, by which all of Florida was given up to the Americans. Then General Jackson was made the first American Governor of Florida.

8. When the people of Missouri asked Congress to admit their Territory into the Union as a State, there arose a great deal of

QUESTIONS.—3. What did many people do? 4. What can you say about Monroe's administration? 5. What occurred in the South? 6. What did General Jackson do? 7. What did the people think? What was done? 8. What can you tell about Missouri?

disputing in Congress and out of it, as to whether slaves should be allowed there. These disputes continued about two years, and at times they were very warm.

9. It was finally agreed to allow negro slaves in Missouri ; but it was also agreed that a line should be drawn from the southern boundary of Missouri to the Pacific Ocean, and that north of that line there should never be any slaves, in any new State that might be formed there. This was called the *Missouri Compromise*.

10. While this question was disturbing the people, Mr. Monroe and Mr. Tompkins were again chosen President and Vice-President. There was very little opposition to them, for the old Federal party had almost ceased to exist.

11. In 1818, Congress made a law by which the old soldiers of the Revolution, yet living, were to be paid so much money every year. I am sure you are glad of that. The same year an arrangement was made for the Americans to share with the British in the Newfoundland fisheries. Do you remember what I told you on page 23, about Cabot seeing so many codfish in the neighborhood of that island ? ~~+~~

12. The sea-robbers, or pirates, were not all in the Mediterranean. There were a great many of them among the West India Islands, and they annoyed our merchant-vessels. The President sent some ships there in 1822, and they destroyed more than twenty of the pirate vessels. Commodore Perry captured many more of them the next year, and then the yellow fever deprived him of his life.

13. And now a pleasant thing happened. La Fayette, who, you remember [page 136], helped the Americans so nobly in the old War for Independence, came to visit the people of the United States. He had become an old man. He arrived in the summer of 1824, staid until the next year, and traveled more than five thousand miles among us. A national vessel named *Brandywine*, in his honor, was then sent to convey him home.

QUESTIONS.—9. What was agreed to ? 10. What can you tell about a new election ? 11. What can you tell about the old soldiers and the fisheries ? 12. What can you tell about West India pirates ? 13. What can you tell about La Fayette ?

---

John Quincy Adams.

Prosperity of the United States.

14. In the autumn of 1824, the people of the United States chose a new Chief Magistrate. John Quincy Adams, son of the old President, John Adams, was elected to that high office, and John C. Calhoun of South Carolina, was chosen Vice-President.

---

## SECTION VIII.

ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION. [1825-1829.]

1. John Quincy Adams, the sixth President of the United States, was a youth during the Revolution; yet he saw and knew much of its scenes. He became President on the 4th of March, 1825. At that time the United States were at peace with all the world, and every thing appeared bright with prosperity.

2. How I wish, my Young Friend, that in telling you the history of the United States, I could have told you of such pleasant and peaceful years as the country was blessed with while John Quincy Adams was President. But, alas! too much of the story is made up of wars and disputes—of the doings of bad men and the sufferings of good men. I hope you will live to see the time when wars and quar-



J. Q. ADAMS, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

QUESTIONS.—14. What about another election? 1. What can you tell about John Quincy Adams? What can you say about peace and prosperity? 2. What would I like to tell you? Of what is history made up?

The Erie Canal.

A singular coincidence.

The Tariff.

rels will be no more heard of. When every body shall try to do right, that time will have come.

3. There was a little trouble in Georgia in connection with the removal of the Creek and Cherokee Indians from that State, at the commencement of Adams's administration. But this difficulty soon disappeared, and these Indians went beyond the Mississippi river.



DEWITT CLINTON.

4. The same year, the great canal in the State of New York, which connects Lake Erie with the Hudson river, was completed. It was a most wonderful work, for it was really making a navigable river over three hundred and sixty miles in length. Dewitt Clinton did more than any other man to accomplish the work, and his name will never be spoken but with pride.

5. A remarkable occurrence took place in the summer of 1826. On the 4th of July, just fifty years after the Declaration of Independence was adopted, Thomas Jefferson and John Adams died. They were both on the Committee that drew up the Declaration, you remember [verse 17, page 129], both had been foreign ministers, and both had been Vice-Presidents, and then Presidents of the United States. At the time of their death, Mr. Adams was almost ninety years old, and Mr. Jefferson almost eighty-three.

6. I have told you how the Americans, who commenced manufacturing cloth and other things during the war, were injured afterward by such goods coming from England, and being sold cheaper than they could make them. Well, in order to help the American manufacturers, Congress, in 1828, decreed that so much should be paid to the government for such and such goods brought from England and France, and used by the Americans.

7. This *duty*, or *tariff*, as it was called, made such goods

**QUESTIONS.**—3. What can you tell about the Creek Indians in Georgia? 4. What can you tell about a great canal? 5. What remarkable occurrence took place? 6. What more can you tell about American manufacturers?

Andrew Jackson.

His character.

dearer, and then the Americans could make money by manufacturing them at the same price. This plan to protect our manufacturers, and get money for the government, was called *The American System*. It was afterward a cause of trouble, as I shall tell you presently.

8. President Adams's term now drew to a close. The nation was very prosperous. The government was very little in debt, and was at peace with all the world. In the autumn of 1828, the people chose the great soldier, Andrew Jackson, to be their Chief Magistrate, and John C. Calhoun was elected Vice-President.

## SECTION IX.

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

[1829-1837.]

1. Andrew Jackson, the seventh President of the United States, was the last of the Chief Magistrates, except Harrison, who lived during the Revolution. Jackson, though quite a lad, was in the Patriot army in South Carolina, and a brave boy he was.

2. Jackson became President on the 4th of March, 1829. He was an honest man, with a strong mind; and he would always do what he thought was right, without caring a fig about what people might say.

3. Things went on pretty smoothly for two or three years.



JACKSON, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

QUESTIONS.—7. What can you tell about a tariff? 8. What can you say about our country, and a new election? 1, 2. What can you say about General Jackson?

Opposition to the United States Bank.The Black Hawk War.

There was a little trouble about the Cherokee Indians, in Georgia, for a while, but nothing caused much uneasiness until the summer of 1832, when matters concerning the United States Bank, the Western Indians, and the Tariff, made a great stir.

4. The Bank could not exist after 1836, unless Congress should decree otherwise. At the beginning, Jackson believed that it ought not to exist, and promptly said so. In the winter of 1832, the officers of the Bank asked Congress to recharter it, that is, decree that it should go on and do business after 1836. Congress did so, but it was of no use.

5. I have told you [verse 4, page 172] that no decree can become a law until the President shall put his name to it. When the Bank decree of Congress was handed to the President for him to sign, he refused, and gave them to understand, that if they should make forty such decrees, he would never put his name to one of them. This refusal is called a *Veto*. This made a great many people, all over the country, very angry, for they thought business could not be done well without the Bank.

6. On page 7 is the picture of the head of Black Hawk, a great Indian chief. Well, in the summer of 1832, Black Hawk led some of the warriors of the Western tribes against the white people near the Mississippi. But the war did not last long.

A black and white engraving of John C. Calhoun, an American statesman. He is shown from the chest up, wearing a dark coat, a white cravat, and a white waistcoat. His hair is powdered and styled upwards. The portrait is set against a light background with some dark, sketchy marks above it.  
United States soldiers beat the Indians, and Black Hawk was made a prisoner. Then they took him to New York and other great cities, and he was so astonished at the number and power of the white people, that he resolved never to go to war with them again.

7. The most serious trouble was about the Tariff, of which I have told you. The people at the South did not like it; and those of South Car-

JOHN C. CALHOUN.

QUESTIONS.—3. What occurred during the first two or three years? 4. What can you tell about the United States Bank? 5. What more can you tell about the Bank, and Congress, and a veto? 6. What can you tell about Black Hawk?

---

Trouble in South Carolina. Henry Clay. Jackson and the United States Bank.

---

olina declared that they would not pay the duty on goods brought into Charleston. They were upheld in this by Mr. Calhoun, their greatest statesman.

8. But this was breaking the great bargain made in the federal Constitution, and President Jackson plainly told the people of South Carolina that they must pay the duty, or he would send United States troops there to compel them to, as Washington did, you remember [page 174], among the whisky-makers of Pennsylvania.

9. Matters appeared darker and darker every day, and most people thought there would be war. Then, early in 1833, Henry Clay, one of the wisest men we ever had in Congress, proposed a plan, called the Compromise Measure, which satisfied all parties pretty well. It was adopted, and so the trouble ceased.

10. Again in April, 1833, Jackson made war upon the United States Bank. Almost ten millions of dollars, belonging to the United States, were in that bank, and the use of this money was profitable. Jackson declared that the money was not safe there, and he ordered it all to be taken from the bank, and put into various State banks. This injured the old bank very much, and as it could not get a new charter, it stopped business forever, in 1836. This removal of the deposits, as it was called, made the merchants and others very angry, and business got into great confusion.

11. Jackson was again chosen President of the United States, in the autumn of 1832, and most of the people believed him to be the best man in the world to manage matters. Among other things, he attempted the removal of all the Indians in the United States to a fine country west of the Mississippi, where they would not be disturbed by the white people.

QUESTIONS.—7. What trouble now occurred? 8. What did the President do? 9. How was the trouble ended? 10. What can you tell about the United States Bank and the public money? 11. What can you tell of a new election? What did Jackson try to do?



HENRY CLAY.

126

## The Seminoles and Creeks.

## Jackson's administration.



OSCEOLA.

12. The Seminoles in Florida refused to go. Led by Osceola, a brave and cunning chief, they made war upon the white people, which continued for several years. Many United States soldiers were sent there, from time to time, but the Indians, in their dark swamps, defied them.

13. Finally, in 1836, the Creeks joined the Seminoles, and mail-coaches, steamboats, and villages in Georgia and Alabama, were attacked by them. General Scott, of whom I shall soon tell you much more, went there, and beat the Creeks. During the summer of 1836, several thousands of them went to their new homes beyond the Mississippi.

14. President Jackson's second term now drew to a close. He had ruled with wisdom and energy, and the United States were more thought of by the world than they ever were before. France, and other governments of Europe, were compelled to be honest in paying what had long been owing to the people of this country, for injuries done to their ships before the war of 1812. Jackson always acted upon the principle—*ask nothing but what is right, and submit to nothing that is wrong.*

15. Two more new States had now been added to the Union, by the admission of Arkansas and Michigan. In the autumn of 1836, Martin Van Buren, of New York, who had been Vice-President for four years, was chosen President of the United States; and in the following winter the Senate chose Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, to be Vice-President.

QUESTIONS.—12. What can you tell about Indians? 13. What can you tell of an Indian War? 14. What can you say about Jackson's administration? 15. What can you tell about new States? What about another election?

## SECTION X.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION. [1837-1841.]

1. Martin Van Buren became the eighth President of the United States, on the 4th of March, 1837. He was born just at the close of the Revolution. He was a poor boy, but by doing right, and studying and working very hard, he became the greatest man in the United States, when he was fifty-five years old.

2. At this time, business all over the country was in great confusion. The State banks had lent the public money to almost every body, and almost every body who borrowed it became proud and extravagant, built fine houses, and even commenced building whole villages. They acted as if they never expected to pay the money back, and a great many did not. Finally, when the banks would not lend any more, these people could not pay the money back to the banks, nor to others, so almost every one suffered.

3. The troubles in business became so great, that Van Buren called Congress together in September, 1837, to talk the matter over. But they did very little to help the people out of their

**Questions.**—1. What can you tell about Martin Van Buren? 2. What can you say about business and the actions of the people? 3. What can you tell about Congress?



VAN BUREN, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

Sub-Treasury.Seminole war.North Eastern boundary.

troubles. Finally it was concluded not to let the banks have any more of the public money. So men called Sub-Treasurers were appointed to receive it at different sea-ports, and keep it until called for. This plan, which has been in use ever since, was called *The Independent Treasury System*.

4. The Seminole war was continued. Finally Osceola was invited to the camp of General Jessup, who commanded the United States troops in Florida, to have a talk about peace. There Osceola was made a prisoner, and taken to Charleston, where he died not long afterward. This was unfair; and yet it seemed the only way to stop the war.

5. Colonel Taylor, who afterward became President of the United States, was in Florida a long time with troops, and had several battles with the Indians; but they were not finally subdued until 1842, when the war ended. It had continued seven years.

6. In 1837, some of the people of Canada resolved to become independent of Great Britain, and commenced a revolution. Many Americans went there to help them, and this caused very unpleasant feelings between the governments of the United States and Great Britain.

7. President Van Buren did all he could to keep the Americans from going to Canada, but it was not until 1841, when John Tyler was President, that a stop was put to it. Then the revolution had been put down; and, since then, all has been pretty quiet in Canada.

8. At this time the Americans had a serious dispute with the British, about the boundary line between the State of Maine and the province of New Brunswick. This, too, made a great deal of bad feeling, and at one time the people in that region armed themselves for war. General Scott went there and made peace, and in 1842 the whole matter was settled.

9. In the autumn of 1841, General Harrison, of Ohio, of whom I have told you, was chosen President of the United

QUESTIONS.—4, 5. What more can you tell about the Seminole war? 6. What can you tell of troubles in Canada? 7. What did the Presidents do? 8. What can you tell about a boundary line?

---

William Henry Harrison.

His inauguration and death.

States, with John Tyler, of Virginia, as Vice-President. Now there were two parties, called Whigs and Democrats. Those who were the friends of Jackson and Van Buren, were the Democrats, and those who elected Harrison were Whigs.

---

## SECTION XI.

HARRISON'S AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION. [1841-1845.]

1. William Henry Harrison, the ninth President of the United States, was born more than two years before the Battle of Bunker's Hill, of which I have told you. He was a little boy all through that old war.

2. General Harrison became President on the 4th of March, 1841, and precisely one month afterward, he died. There was great grief among his friends all over the country, but the people felt that the event was right, for God had ordered it so. Harrison was an old man, almost seventy years of age. According to the decree of the Federal Constitution, the Vice-President became the Chief Magistrate, and on the 6th of April, 1841, the



HARRISON, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

## ADMINISTRATION OF TYLER

commenced. John Tyler was a much younger man, and was the tenth President of the United States.

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you say about a new election? 1. What can you tell about General Harrison? 2. What can you tell about his death and the consequences?

## Congress.

## Tyler's veto.

## Changes in the country.



TYLER, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

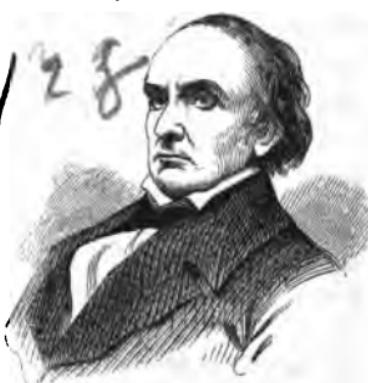
Island was favored with a new constitution, and measures were taken for the admission of Texas into the Union. There was much trouble in Rhode Island about the constitution. Some liked the old charter given them by King Charles the Second [verse 3, page 83] well enough, and others wished a new one. The two parties came very near having a war about it.

6. The admission of Texas was an important matter. That State

3. President Harrison had appointed the last day of May for Congress to meet, to talk over the affairs of the country. They did so, and remained together until the middle of September. Their chief business was to make a law for chartering a United States Bank.

4. President Tyler, like Jackson, refused to sign the law. His political friends were very much offended, and all of his Cabinet advisers left him, and would have nothing more to do with him, except the great Daniel Webster, who was the Secretary of State. Mr. Webster knew that it was best for his country to remain, and he did so. Men should love their country more than party.

5. During Mr. Tyler's administration, changes were made in the tariff laws; the State of Rhode



DANIEL WEBSTER.

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell about Congress? 4. What can you tell about Tyler's troubles? What did Webster do? 5. What occurred during Tyler's administration?

---

Texas.

Its Annexation.

The Magnetic Telegraph.

was once a part of Mexico. A great many Americans had settled there, and they finally concluded to be free. But they had to fight for their freedom, and in 1836 the people of Texas became independent of Mexico.

7. After awhile the Texas people wished their State to become one of the United States, and arrangements were made for that purpose in 1844. Just at the close of Mr. Tyler's administration in 1845, Congress agreed to it, and Texas became one of the States of our Union, on the 4th of July following.

8. The annexation of Texas had much effect on the election of President in the autumn of 1844. A majority of the people were in favor of that annexation, and James K. Polk, of Tennessee, who was also in favor of it, was chosen Chief Magistrate, with George M. Dallas as Vice-President.

9. One of the most wonderful things ever before known, occurred in 1844 in connection with Mr. Polk. A meeting of Democrats at Baltimore, having selected Mr. Polk as the best man for President, the news of this choice was sent from there to Washington, forty miles, by the Magnetic Telegraph. This wonderful invention by Professor Samuel F. B. Morse, an American, by which one man's thoughts may be conveyed to another man, a thousand miles in a second, was then just completed, and that was the first public use ever made of it. Now, you know, sending thoughts by Telegraph is a very common thing.

---

## SECTION XII.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION. [1845-1849.]

1. James Knox Polk was fifty years old when he became the eleventh President of the United States on the 4th of March,

QUESTIONS.—6. What can you say about Texas? 8. What did Texas and the United States do? 8. What happened in 1844? 9. What can you tell about a wonderful invention? 1. What can you say about James K. Polk?



POLK, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

the same time some American war-vessels went into the Gulf of Mexico.

4. A large number of Mexican troops collected at Matamoras, near the mouth of the Rio Grande, at the close of 1845. Early in January following, General Taylor with most of his troops, formed a camp and commenced building a fort on the opposite side of the river. General Ampudia (pronounced *Am-poo-dhee-ah*) who commanded the Mexicans, ordered him to leave in twenty-four hours, but he refused to do so.

5. General Arista (pronounced *Ah-reees-tah*) now became the Mexican commander. He was a better soldier than Ampudia, and Taylor's situation became a dangerous one. Soon, armed

1845. He was a Democrat in politics, and his party was strong throughout the country.

2. The coming in of Texas was the most important event at the beginning of Mr. Polk's administration. The government of Mexico had never acknowledged the independence of that State, but continued to claim it as a part of that republic. Of course the act of Congress in admitting it was very offensive.

3. This offense and an old quarrel about debts due from Mexico to people of the United States, soon caused a war. Expecting this, the President ordered General Taylor and fifteen hundred soldiers to go to Texas in July. They encamped at Corpus Christi, not far from the Rio Grande, or Grand River. At

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you say about the admission of Texas? 3. What can you tell about preparations for war? 4. What occurred on the Rio Grande? 5. What can you tell about the two armies?

Mexicans crossed the river, and late in April some Americans were killed by them. This was the first blood shed in

#### THE WAR WITH MEXICO.

6. Taylor had left some soldiers, with provisions and other things, at Point Isabel. He heard that a large number of Mexicans were marching in that direction, so he hastened thither with a greater part of his army. When he had gone, the Mexicans attacked his fort, opposite Matamoras, which compelled him to march back to defend that.

7. On his way back, General Taylor fell in with six thousand Mexicans, under Arista. It was on the 8th of May, 1846. The place where they met was called *Palo Alto*, and there they had a very hard fight for five hours. The Mexicans were badly beaten, and lost six hundred men.

8. Just at evening the next day, the Americans again fell in with the Mexicans at a place called *Resaca de la Palma*, three miles from Matamoras. There they had another severe battle, and the Mexicans were beaten, with a loss of more than a thousand men. These misfortunes greatly alarmed them.

9. Before these two battles were heard of in the United States, Congress had declared war against Mexico, and the Secretary of War, with the help of General Scott, had planned an extensive campaign. Mexico, you will see by the map, extends across to the Pacific Ocean, so it was planned to send war-ships around to attack the enemy on that coast. The President was allowed to raise an army of fifty thousand men, and it was determined to take possession of Mexico.

10. After his successful battles, Taylor drove the Mexicans from Matamoras, and marched toward Monterey, a strong city in Mexico. He took that city on the 24th of September, and then encamped near, where he waited for further orders what to do, from the President of the United States.

QUESTIONS.—6. What can you tell about the commencement of the war? 7. 8. What can you tell about two battles with the Mexicans? 9. What did Congress do? What plans were arranged? 10. What can you tell about General Taylor in Mexico?

## Military movements.

## General Scott.

## Northern Mexico conquered.

11. While Taylor was waiting, other officers were busy elsewhere. General Wool was preparing the recruits, or the new men who joined the army, for military service ; and in October he marched into Mexico, and took possession of some of the country. In November General Worth took one or two places away from the Mexicans. At that time General Taylor was in motion, with his main army. After taking possession of a large tract of country, Taylor encamped at Victoria.



12. General Scott, as commander-in-chief of the armies of the United States, went to Mexico early in 1847, and prepared to attack the strong town of Vera Cruz, and the fort there. For that purpose, he strengthened his own army, by taking many troops from General Taylor. Yet that brave soldier, with only about five thousand men, marched boldly against the Mexican general, Santa Anna, who had twenty thousand.

13. At Buena Vista (pronounced Bwe-nah Ves-tah), which means "pleasant view," the two armies had a terrible battle on the 23d of February, 1847. It lasted all day. The Mexicans were dreadfully beaten, and left full two thousand men on the field, killed and wounded. The Americans lost about seven hundred.

14. All northern Mexico was now in possession of the Americans ; and in the course of a few months, the conquering Taylor returned to the United States, and was everywhere received with the greatest honors. Then the people first began to talk about making him President of our Republic.

15. While these things were occurring, the Americans, under different leaders, were taking possession of other parts of northern Mexico. General Kearney was in chief command of what was called the Army of the West ; and in August, 1846, he drove

QUESTIONS.—11. What can you tell about other movements in Mexico ? 12. What can you tell about Generals Scott and Taylor ? 13. What can you tell about a battle ? 15. What else did the Americans do ?

---

Fremont and California.

Doniphan.

Scott's invasion.

---

the Mexicans from Santa Fé, the chief city of New Mexico, and took possession of that broad territory.

16. During the same summer, Colonel Fremont (the brave explorer of the Rocky Mountains) and others, took possession of California. After some more battling until early in January, 1847, all became quiet. Then a vast territory, stretching along the Pacific Ocean, and several hundred miles into the country, came into possession of the Americans.

17. In the mean-while, Colonel Doniphan, with a thousand brave Missourians, made a triumphant march into northern Mexico. After capturing Chihuahua (pronounced Chee-wah-wah), one of the finest provinces of northern Mexico, he returned to New Orleans, having marched over five thousand miles. General Scott was now on his victorious way toward the great city of Mexico. Listen attentively, and I will tell you something about



COLONEL FREMONT.

#### SCOTT'S INVASION OF MEXICO.

18. Scott landed near Vera Cruz with about thirteen thousand men, early in March, 1847. His troops were borne there by a fleet commanded by Commodore Conner, which remained to assist in the attack on Vera Cruz. That attack occurred on the 18th of March, and continued nine days. Then the city; the strong castle of San Juan de Ulloa (pronounced San Whan dah Oo-loo-ah), and five thousand prisoners, with five hundred cannons, were given up to the Americans.

19. On the 8th of April, Scott's army commenced their march toward the city of Mexico. At Cerro Gordo, a difficult place in the mountains, they were met by Santa Anna and a large army.

QUESTIONS.—16. What can you tell about Fremont and others? 17. What can you tell about Colonel Doniphan? 18. What can you tell about the Americans at Vera Cruz? 19. What can you tell of the battle at Cerro Gordo?

---

Progress of the American army.

Capture of Mexico.

End of the war.

---

There they had a severe battle, when the Mexicans lost, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, over four thousand men. Santa Anna escaped on the back of a mule.

20. Week after week, Scott's army continued to move on through that interesting country, taking possession of place after place, and everywhere driving the Mexicans before them. Within two months, that army of not more than ten thousand men, took some of the strongest places in Mexico, made ten thousand prisoners, and captured seven hundred cannons, ten thousand muskets, and thirty thousand bombshells and cannon balls.

21. Scott rested awhile at Puebla (pronounced Pweb-lah), and in August moved on over the lofty Cordilleras, a chain of high mountains in Mexico. From the summits of these hills, the Americans looked down into distant valleys, and saw the great city of Mexico, the object of their long and perilous march.

22. Onward the conquering army marched, and after fighting several hard battles, and always beating the Mexicans, they appeared before the ancient city, where Cortez, a great Spanish soldier, appeared almost three hundred years before. Santa Anna and his army, with the government officers, fled from the doomed capital at night; and on the next morning, the 14th of September, 1847, General Scott and his brave army entered the city as victors, and took possession of the Mexican empire.

23. The war soon ceased. On the 2d of February, 1848, the Mexican Congress and American Commissioners made a bargain or treaty for peace. It was agreed to by the United States Government, and then all but New Mexico and California, which had been taken from the Mexicans by the Americans, was given up. These provinces became a part of the United States, and California has since been admitted into the Union.

24. In the same month when this treaty was made, gold was first found in a mill stream on the American fork of the Sacramento river, in California. Soon it was found elsewhere; and

QUESTIONS.—20. What did Scott's army accomplish? 21. What can you tell of the approach to the city of Mexico? 22. What can you tell about the conquest of Mexico? 23. What can you tell about the agreements of the two governments? 24. What can you tell about finding gold? What did it lead to?

Gold in California.

General Taylor.

His Inauguration.

when it was known that gold was plentiful there, thousands of people went from the United States and elsewhere, to dig it. Gold, worth millions and millions of dollars, has been found in California since then, and a fine State of the Union has grown up on that coast of the Pacific Ocean.

25. The war with Mexico was the chief event of Mr. Polk's administration. A difficulty with England, concerning the northern boundary of Oregon, had been settled; and in May, 1848, Wisconsin was admitted into the Union as a State.

26. The brave deeds of General Taylor, in Mexico, made him respected and beloved by the people of the United States, and at the election for President, in the autumn of 1848, he was chosen Chief Magistrate of the Republic. Millard Fillmore, of New York, was elected Vice-President.

## SECTION XIII.

TAYLOR'S ADMINISTRATION

[1849-1850.]

1. Zachary Taylor was sixty-five years of age when, on the 5th of March, 1849, he became the twelfth President of the United States. The 4th of March came on Sunday that year, and he was not inaugurated until the next day.

2. I have told you that thousands went to California to dig gold. Very soon there were peo-



TAYLOR, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

QUESTIONS.—25. What were the chief events of Polk's administration? 26. What can you say about a new election? 1. What can you tell about President Taylor and his inauguration?

ple enough there to form a State, and in September, 1849, twenty months after the first gold was found there, they met and formed a constitution, or solemn covenant, by which they agreed to be governed.

3. In February, 1850, the people of California asked Congress to admit their country into the Union as a State. That request made a great stir, for they had said in their constitution that there should be no negro slaves in California. The people of the northern and western States liked that, but those of the southern States did not like it at all. At one time it was thought by some that they would go to war about it.

4. This matter was disputed about in Congress for many months. Finally, Henry Clay, of whom I have told you, [p 205,] proposed a plan that suited all parties pretty well. It was agreed in that plan, that California might come in without slaves, and that if any slaves ran away from the South into the free States they should be given up to their owners. All this was agreed to in Congress; but many people, particularly at the North, were not pleased with what was called the *Compromise Measure*.

5. While this matter was being talked over in Congress, President Taylor sickened and died. That sad event occurred in July, 1850. He was the second President who had died while in office. The Vice-President, as before, you remember [page 209], then became President, and on the 10th of July, 1850,

#### FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION

commenced.

6. During President Taylor's brief administration of sixteen months, one State and three Territories were added to the Republic. One of the Territories was named Utah, but was called by the people who settled there, Deseret, or the Land of the Honey-bee. It is near the middle of our continent.

7. Utah was settled by a people called *Mormons*. I have not

QUESTIONS.—2. What more can you say about California? 3. What can you tell about California coming into the Union? 4. What was finally done? 5. What sad event happened? 6. What occurred during Taylor's administration?

## The Mormons.

## Cuba.

## Arctic Expedition.

time to tell you much about them. It would be a long story. They are a people with a very queer kind of religion ; and they all do as their head man, or *Prophet*, as he is called, tell them to do. There are now a great many thousands of them in Utah, and I expect there will be much trouble yet, on their account, because they allow things to be done which the people of the United States do not like.

8. Some trouble with Cuba, one of the West India islands belonging to Spain, commenced in the spring of 1850, and at one time it threatened to make war between the United States and Spain. But the dispute was fairly settled, and the trouble disappeared.

9. An important expedition left New York in May, 1850, under the command of Lieutenant De Haven.

It went to the Frozen Ocean, at the North, in search of Sir John Franklin, a great English sailor, who went there five years before, and has never returned. Another similar expedition sailed from New York in 1853, under Dr. Kane, and was gone until the autumn of 1855. The commander and his men suffered terribly among the ice and snows, during the long, dark polar winters. Dr. Kane lived only a little more than a year after his return.

10. In 1852, the United States and Great Britain had a dispute about catching fishes in the neighborhood of Newfoundland. They both sent armed ships there, but the difficulty was finally settled by the better way of *talking*, rather than by *fighting*.

QUESTIONS.—7. What can you tell about the Mormons? 8. What can you tell about Cuba? 9. What can you tell of wonderful expeditions to the North? 10. What can you tell about a fishery dispute?



FILLMORE, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

Japan expedition.New election.Franklin Pierce.

11. In the same year American war-ships went to Japan, off the eastern coast of China, and the commander carried a letter to the Emperor, from our President, asking him to allow Americans, as well as the Dutch, to trade there. The Emperor agreed to it, and the war-ships came home. You will be glad to know a great deal about the Japan people, when you shall be older.

12. In the autumn of 1852, the people of the United States chose Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, to be their next President, and William R. King, of Alabama, for Vice-President. Not long afterward a new Territory, called Washington, was made out of Oregon. So the States of our Confederation continually grow. First Territories, then States.

---

## SECTION XIV.

### PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION.

[1853-1857.]



1. Franklin Pierce was forty-nine years of age when he became the fourteenth President of the United States, on the 4th of March, 1853. The country was prosperous and peaceful, and nothing disturbed the general harmony, except a little dispute with Mexico about boundaries, which was soon settled.

2. In May of that year, ships were sent to explore the eastern coast of Asia; and at the same time, there were land expeditions in progress, searching for a good route for a railway to the Pacific

PIERCE, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

QUESTIONS.—11. What can you tell about an expedition to Japan? 12. What can you tell about a new election? 1. What can you tell about President Pierce and the coun-

Exploring expeditions.

Crystal Palace.

Kansas.

Ocean. When all things contemplated by these expeditions shall be completed, and ocean steamships go regularly across the Pacific from America to Asia, we may go to the wonderful land of China and Japan, in a very little while.

3. In the summer of 1853, an immense building made of iron and glass, was put up in the



CRYSTAL PALACE IN NEW YORK.

there to see them.

140

4. In the year 1855, the Americans became much excited about negro slavery in a Territory west of the Mississippi, called Kansas. People from all parts of the Union went there to settle, and they quarreled, and sometimes fought, because a part of them were in favor of having slaves there, and a part of them were opposed to it. There was real war there, in 1856, but in the course of time the ill-feeling became less, and order and quiet prevailed.

5. In 1855, Great Britain was at war with the Russians, on the shores of the Black sea, and British officers residing in the United States employed men here to join the British army there. This was contrary to our laws, and the President sent those

try? What can you tell about exploring expeditions? 3. What can you tell about a great show? 4. What can you say about Kansas? 5, 6. What can you tell about trouble with British officials, and a new election?



139 AN OCEAN STEAMSHIP.

City of New York, and was called the Crystal Palace. It was filled with beautiful and useful things from all parts of the world, and thousands of people went

James Buchanan.

Abraham Lincoln.

officers out of the country. Among them was the British Minister at Washington City. His government was offended, and talked about war, but knowing that the Americans were right, the English concluded to say no more about it.

6. President Pierce's term of office ended on the 4th of March, 1857, when James Buchanan of Pennsylvania, became

the fifteenth President of the United States. The greater portion of his administration was marked by much trouble in Kansas, and secret preparations by wicked politicians in the Slave States and among his own advisors, to destroy the Union. The Kansas troubles ended by that Territory becoming a State, in which the people decreed, slavery should never exist.

7. In the autumn of 1860, Abraham Lincoln of Illinois, was elected President of the United States. Then the wicked politicians just spoken of, having made most of the people around them believe the false story that the new President intended to set all the slaves free, caused open rebellion in several of the

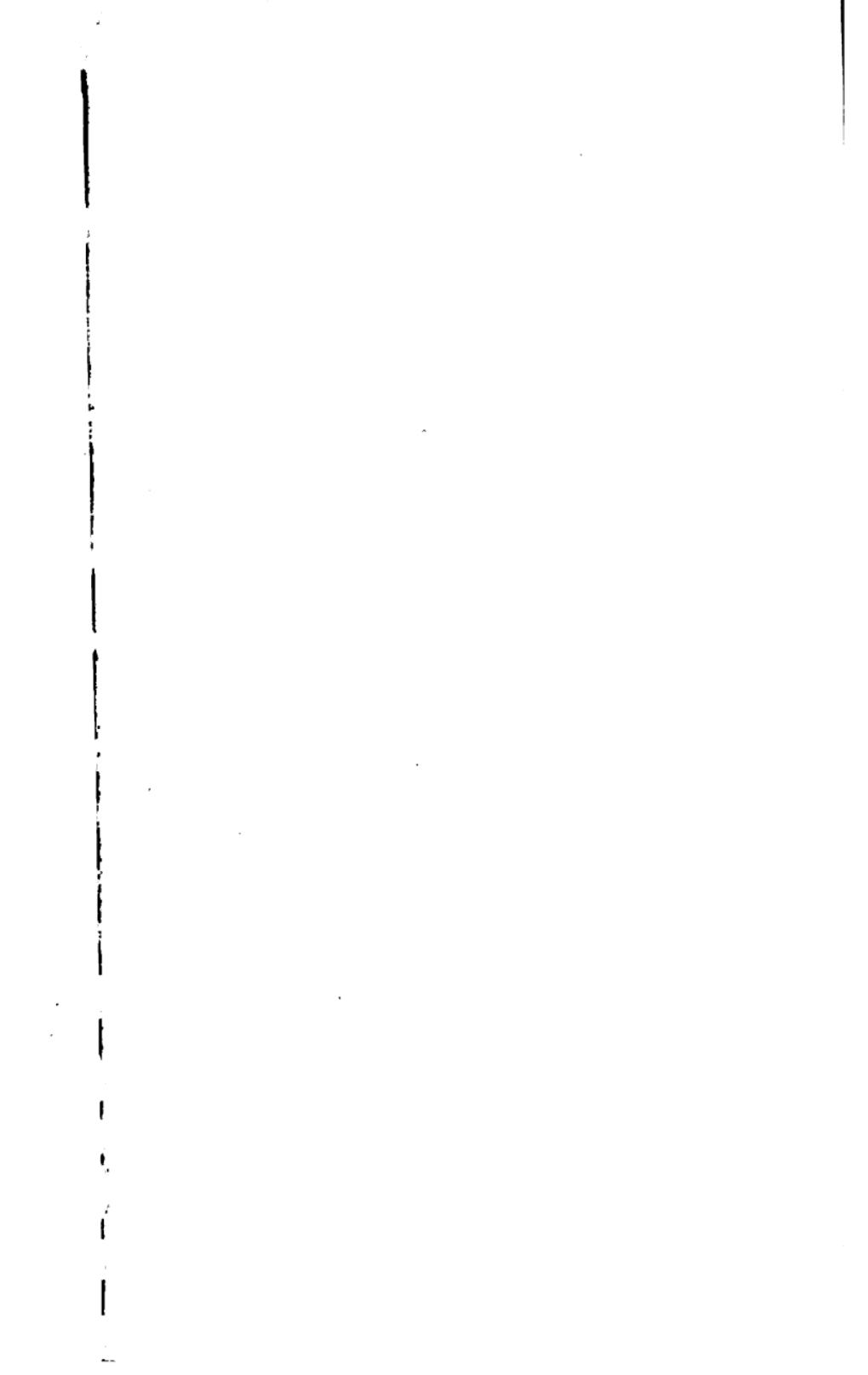
BUCHANAN, AND HIS RESIDENCE.  
southern States. The President called for soldiers to stop it. All over the Free States the people offered to help him, and very soon he had more soldiers than he asked for. A terrible war was begun, in which many thousands of men perished, and many hundreds of homes were made unhappy.

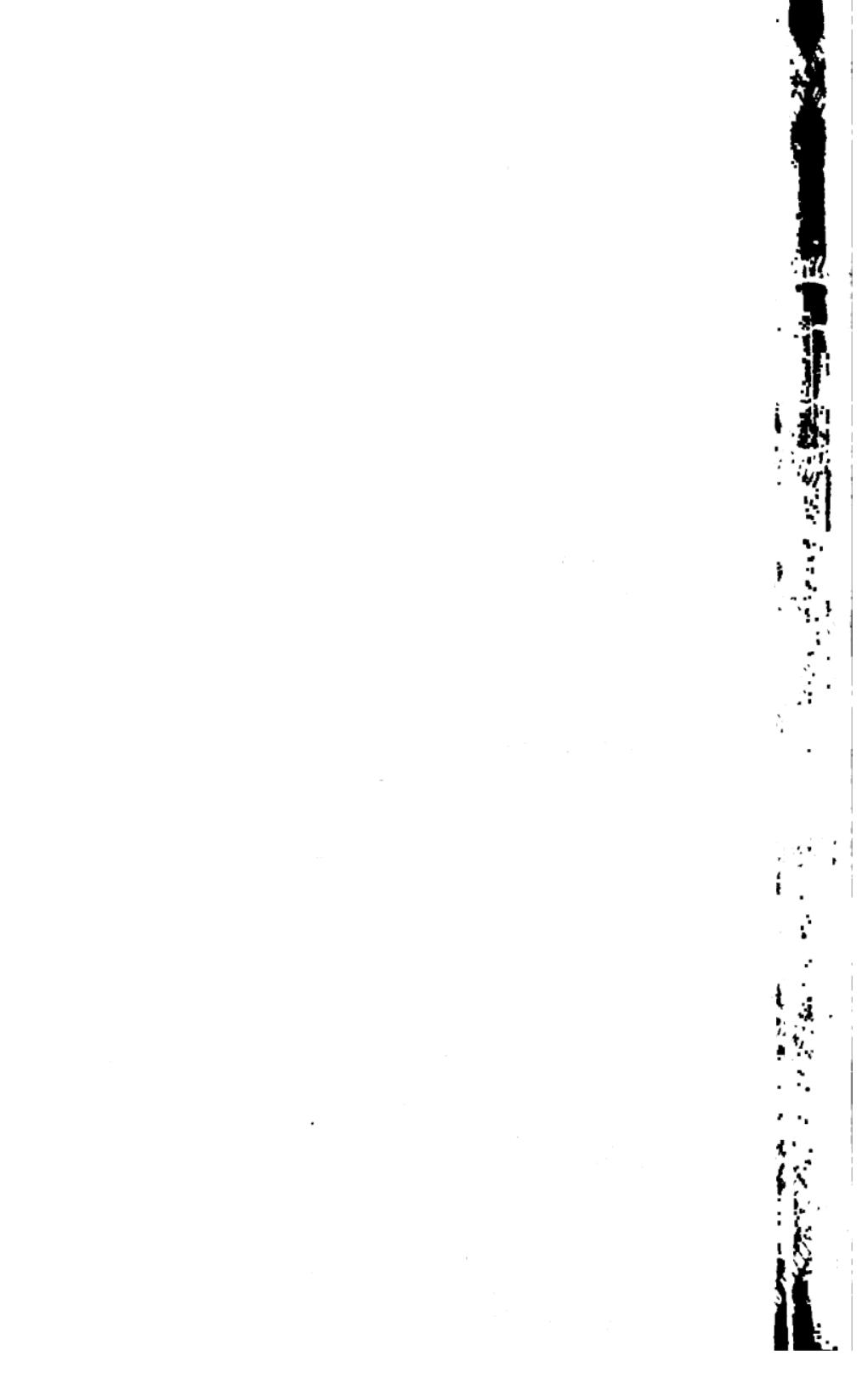
8. Such, my Young Friends, are the sad words with which I am compelled to close this long but I hope not wearisome story. Brighter days are in store for our country. Very soon











YB 2065;

